

# A Course in Model Theory

Katin Tent & Martin Ziegler

December 12, 2021

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>The Basics</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1	Structures . . . . .	3
1.2	Language . . . . .	5
1.3	Theories . . . . .	7
<b>2</b>	<b>Elementary Extensions and Compactness</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	Elementary substructures . . . . .	9
2.2	The Compactness Theorem . . . . .	11
2.3	The Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem . . . . .	14
<b>3</b>	<b>Quantifier Elimination</b>	<b>16</b>
3.1	Preservation theorems . . . . .	16
3.2	Quantifier elimination . . . . .	21
3.3	Examples . . . . .	27
<b>4</b>	<b>Countable Models</b>	<b>34</b>
4.1	The omitting types theorem . . . . .	34
4.2	The space of types . . . . .	35
4.3	$\aleph_0$ -categorical theories . . . . .	38
4.4	The amalgamation method . . . . .	42
4.5	Prime Models . . . . .	45
<b>5</b>	<b><math>\aleph_1</math>-categorical Theories</b>	<b>49</b>
5.1	Indiscernibles . . . . .	49
5.2	$\omega$ -stable theories . . . . .	53
5.3	Prime extensions . . . . .	58
5.4	Lachlan's Theorem . . . . .	61

5.5	Vaughtian pairs . . . . .	62
5.6	Algebraic formulas . . . . .	67
5.7	Strongly minimal sets . . . . .	69
5.8	The Baldwin-Lachlan Theorem . . . . .	76
<b>6</b>	<b>Morley Rank</b>	<b>76</b>
6.1	Saturated models and the monster . . . . .	76
6.2	Morley rank . . . . .	84
6.3	Countable models of $\aleph_1$ -categorical theories . . . . .	91
6.4	Computation of Morley Rank . . . . .	93
<b>7</b>	<b>Simple Theories</b>	<b>93</b>
7.1	Dividing and forking . . . . .	93
<b>8</b>	<b>Stable Theories</b>	<b>96</b>
8.1	Heirs and coheirs . . . . .	96
8.2	Stability . . . . .	96
8.3	Definable types . . . . .	96
8.4	Elimination of imaginaries and $T^{\text{eq}}$ . . . . .	96
<b>A</b>	<b>Set Theory</b>	<b>96</b>
A.1	Sets and classes . . . . .	96
A.2	Cardinals . . . . .	97
<b>B</b>	<b>Fields</b>	<b>99</b>
B.1	Ordered fields . . . . .	99
<b>C</b>	<b>Combinatorics</b>	<b>99</b>
C.1	Pregeometris . . . . .	99
<b>D</b>	<b>Index</b>	<b>101</b>
		<b>102</b>
<b>E</b>	<b>TODO Don't understand</b>	<b>102</b>

## 1 The Basics

## 1.1 Structures

**Definition 1.1.** A **language**  $L$  is a set of constants, function symbols and relation symbols

**Definition 1.2.** Let  $L$  be a language. An  $L$ -**structure** is a pair  $\mathfrak{A} = (A, (Z^{\mathfrak{A}})_{Z \in L})$  where

$A$	if a non-empty set, the <b>domain</b> or <b>universe</b> of $\mathfrak{A}$
$z^{\mathfrak{A}} \in A$	if $Z$ is a constant
$Z^{\mathfrak{A}} : A^n \rightarrow A$	if $Z$ is an $n$ -ary function symbol
$Z^{\mathfrak{A}} \subseteq A^n$	if $Z$ is an $n$ -ary relation symbol

**Definition 1.3.** Let  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$  be  $L$ -structures. A map  $h : A \rightarrow B$  is called a **homomorphism** if for all  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in A$

$$\begin{aligned} h(c^{\mathfrak{A}}) &= c^{\mathfrak{B}} \\ h(f^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, \dots, a_n)) &= f^{\mathfrak{B}}(h(a_1), \dots, h(a_n)) \\ R^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, \dots, a_n) &\Rightarrow R^{\mathfrak{B}}(h(a_1), \dots, h(a_n)) \end{aligned}$$

We denote this by

$$h : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$$

If in addition  $h$  is injective and

$$R^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, \dots, a_n) \Leftrightarrow R^{\mathfrak{B}}(h(a_1), \dots, h(a_n))$$

for all  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in A$ , then  $h$  is called an (isomorphic) **embedding**. An **isomorphism** is a surjective embedding

**Definition 1.4.** We call  $\mathfrak{A}$  a **substructure** of  $\mathfrak{B}$  if  $A \subseteq B$  and if the inclusion map is an embedding from  $\mathfrak{A}$  to  $\mathfrak{B}$ . We denote this by

$$\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}$$

We say  $\mathfrak{B}$  is an **extension** of  $\mathfrak{A}$  if  $\mathfrak{A}$  is a substructure of  $\mathfrak{B}$

**Lemma 1.5.** Let  $h : \mathfrak{A} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{A}'$  be an isomorphism and  $\mathfrak{B}$  an extension of  $\mathfrak{A}$ . Then there exists an extension  $\mathfrak{B}'$  of  $\mathfrak{A}'$  and an isomorphism  $g : \mathfrak{B} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{B}'$  extending  $h$

For any family  $\mathfrak{A}_i$  of substructures of  $\mathfrak{B}$ , the intersection of the  $A_i$  is either empty or a substructure of  $\mathfrak{B}$ . Therefore if  $S$  is any non-empty subset of  $\mathfrak{B}$ , then there exists a smallest substructure  $\mathfrak{A} = \langle S \rangle^{\mathfrak{B}}$  which contains  $S$ . We call the  $\mathfrak{A}$  the substructure **generated** by  $S$

**Lemma 1.6.** *If  $\mathfrak{a} = \langle S \rangle$ , then every homomorphism  $h : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$  is determined by its values on  $S$*

**Definition 1.7.** Let  $(I, \leq)$  be a **directed partial order**. This means that for all  $i, j \in I$  there exists a  $k \in I$  s.t.  $i \leq k$  and  $j \leq k$ . A family  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  of  $L$ -structures is called **directed** if

$$i \leq j \Rightarrow \mathfrak{A}_i \subseteq \mathfrak{A}_j$$

If  $I$  is linearly ordered, we call  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  a **chain**

If a structure  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  is isomorphic to a substructure  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  of itself,

$$h_0 : \mathfrak{A}_0 \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{A}_1$$

then Lemma 1.5 gives an extension

$$h_1 : \mathfrak{A}_1 \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{A}_2$$

Continuing in this way we obtain a chain  $\mathfrak{A}_0 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}_1 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}_2 \subseteq \dots$  and an increasing sequence  $h_i : \mathfrak{A}_i \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{A}_{i+1}$  of isomorphism

**Lemma 1.8.** *Let  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  be a directed family of  $L$ -structures. Then  $A = \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$  is the universe of a (uniquely determined)  $L$ -structure*

$$\mathfrak{A} = \bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{A}_i$$

which is an extension of all  $\mathfrak{A}_i$

A subset  $K$  of  $L$  is called a **sublanguage**. An  $L$ -structure becomes a  $K$ -structure, the **reduct**.

$$\mathfrak{A} \upharpoonright K = (A, (Z^{\mathfrak{A}})_{Z \in K})$$

Conversely we call  $\mathfrak{A}$  an **expansion** of  $\mathfrak{A} \upharpoonright K$ .

1. Let  $B \subseteq A$ , we obtain a new language

$$L(B) = L \cup B$$

and the  $L(B)$ -structure

$$\mathfrak{A}_B = (\mathfrak{A}, b)_{b \in B}$$

Note that  $\text{Aut}(\mathfrak{A}_B)$  is the group of automorphisms of  $\mathfrak{A}$  fixing  $B$  elementwise. We denote this group by  $\text{Aut}(\mathfrak{A}/B)$

Let  $S$  be a set, which we call the set of sorts. An  $S$ -sorted language  $L$  is given by a set of constants for each sort in  $S$ , and typed function and relations. For any tuple  $(s_1, \dots, s_n)$  and  $(s_1, \dots, s_n, t)$  there is a set of relation symbols and function symbols respectively. An  $S$ -sorted structure is a pair  $\mathfrak{A} = (A, (Z^{\mathfrak{A}})_{Z \in L})$ , where

$$\begin{aligned} A & \text{ if a family } (A_s)_{s \in S} \text{ of non-empty sets} \\ Z^{\mathfrak{A}} \in A_s & \text{ if } Z \text{ is a constant of sort } s \in S \\ Z^{\mathfrak{A}} : A_{s_1} \times \dots \times A_{s_n} \rightarrow A_t & \text{ if } Z \text{ is a function symbol of type } (s_1, \dots, s_n, t) \\ Z^{\mathfrak{A}} \subseteq A_{s_1} \times \dots \times A_{s_n} & \text{ if } Z \text{ is a relation symbol of type } (s_1, \dots, s_n) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 1.1.** Consider the two-sorted language  $L_{Perm}$  for permutation groups with a sort  $x$  for the set and a sort  $g$  for the group. The constants and function symbols for  $L_{Perm}$  are those of  $L_{Group}$  restricted to the sort  $g$  and an additional function symbol  $\varphi$  of type  $(x, g, x)$ . Thus an  $L_{Perm}$ -structure  $(X, G)$  is given by a set  $X$  and an  $L_{Group}$ -structure  $G$  together with a function  $X \times G \rightarrow X$

## 1.2 Language

**Lemma 1.9.** Suppose  $\vec{b}$  and  $\vec{c}$  agree on all variables which are free in  $\varphi$ . Then

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[\vec{b}] \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[\vec{c}]$$

We define

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[a_1, \dots, a_n]$$

by  $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[\vec{b}]$ , where  $\vec{b}$  is an assignment satisfying  $\vec{b}(x_i) = a_i$ . Because of Lemma 1.9 this is well defined.

Thus  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  defines an  $n$ -ary relation

$$\varphi(\mathfrak{A}) = \{\vec{a} \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[\vec{a}]\}$$

on  $A$ , the **realisation set** of  $\varphi$ . Such realisation sets are called **0-definable subsets** of  $A^n$ , or 0-definable relations

Let  $B$  be a subset of  $A$ . A  **$B$ -definable** subset of  $\mathfrak{A}$  is a set of the form  $\varphi(\mathfrak{A})$  for an  $L(B)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$ . We also say that  $\varphi$  are defined **over**  $B$  and that the set  $\varphi(\mathfrak{A})$  is defined by  $\varphi$ . We call two formulas **equivalent** if in every structure they define the same set.

Atomic formulas and their negations are called **basic**. Formulas without quantifiers are Boolean combinations of basic formulas. It is convenient

to allow the empty conjunction and the empty disjunction. For that we introduce two new formulas: the formula  $\top$ , which is always true, and the formula  $\perp$ , which is always false. We define

$$\bigwedge_{i < 0} \pi_i = \top$$

$$\bigvee_{i < 0} \pi_i = \perp$$

A formula is in **negation normal form** if it is built from basic formulas using  $\wedge, \vee, \exists, \forall$

**Lemma 1.10.** *Every formula can be transformed into an equivalent formula which is in negation normal form*

*Proof.* Let  $\sim$  denote equivalence of formulas. We consider formulas which are built using  $\wedge, \vee, \exists, \forall, \neg$  and move the negation symbols in front of atomic formulas using

$$\neg(\varphi \wedge \psi) \sim (\neg\varphi \vee \neg\psi)$$

$$\neg(\varphi \vee \psi) \sim (\neg\varphi \wedge \neg\psi)$$

$$\neg\exists x\varphi \sim \forall x\neg\varphi$$

$$\neg\forall x\varphi \sim \exists x\neg\varphi$$

$$\neg\neg\varphi \sim \varphi$$

□

**Definition 1.11.** A formula in negation normal form which does not contain any existential quantifier is called **universal**. Formulas in negation normal form without universal quantifiers are called **existential**

**Lemma 1.12.** *Let  $h : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$  be an embedding. Then for all existential formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and all  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in A$  we have*

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[a_1, \dots, a_n] \Rightarrow \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi[h(a_1), \dots, h(a_n)]$$

*For universal  $\varphi$ , the dual holds*

$$\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi[h(a_1), \dots, h(a_n)] \Rightarrow \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[a_1, \dots, a_n]$$

Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be an  $L$ -structure. The **atomic diagram** of  $\mathfrak{A}$  is

$$\text{Diag}(\mathfrak{A}) = \{\varphi \text{ basic } L(A)\text{-sentence} \mid \mathfrak{A}_A \models \varphi\}$$

**Lemma 1.13.** *The models of  $\text{Diag}(\mathfrak{A})$  are precisely those structures  $(\mathfrak{B}, h(a))_{a \in A}$  for embeddings  $h : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$*

*Proof.* The structures  $(\mathfrak{B}, h(a))_{a \in A}$  are models of the atomic diagram by Lemma ?? . For the converse, note that a map  $h$  is an embedding iff it preserves the validity of all formulas of the form

$$\begin{aligned} (\neg)x_1 \dot{=} x_2 \\ c \dot{=} x_1 \\ f(x_1, \dots, x_n) \dot{=} x_0 \\ (\neg)R(x_1, \dots, x_n) \end{aligned}$$

□

**Exercise 1.2.1.** Every formula is equivalent to a formula in prenex normal form:

$$Q_1 x_1 \dots Q_n x_n \varphi$$

The  $Q_i$  are quantifiers and  $\varphi$  is quantifier-free

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} (\forall x)\phi \wedge \psi &\models \forall x(\phi \wedge \psi) \text{ if } \exists x \top \text{ (at least one individual exists)} \\ (\forall x\phi) \vee \psi &\models \forall x(\phi \vee \psi) \\ (\exists x\phi) \wedge \psi &\models \exists x(\phi \wedge \psi) \\ (\exists x\phi) \vee \psi &\models \exists x(\phi \vee \psi) \text{ if } \exists x \top \\ \neg \exists x\phi &\models \forall x\neg\phi \\ \neg \forall x\phi &\models \exists x\neg\phi \\ (\forall x\phi) \rightarrow \psi &\models \exists x(\phi \rightarrow \psi) \text{ if } \exists x \top \\ (\exists x\phi) \rightarrow \psi &\models \forall x(\phi \rightarrow \psi) \\ \phi \rightarrow (\exists x\psi) &\models \exists x(\phi \rightarrow \psi) \text{ if } \exists x \top \\ \phi \rightarrow (\forall x\psi) &\models \forall x(\phi \rightarrow \psi) \end{aligned}$$

□

### 1.3 Theories

**Definition 1.14.** An  $L$ -theory  $T$  is a set of  $L$ -sentences

A theory which has a model is a **consistent** theory. We call a set  $\Sigma$  of  $L$ -formulas **consistent** if there is an  $L$ -structure and an assignment  $\vec{b}$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{A} \models \Sigma[\vec{b}]$  for all  $\varphi \in \Sigma$

**Lemma 1.15.** *Let  $T$  be an  $L$ -theory and  $L'$  be an extension of  $L$ . Then  $T$  is consistent as an  $L$ -theory iff  $T$  is consistent as a  $L'$ -theory*

**Lemma 1.16.** 1. *If  $T \models \varphi$  and  $T \models (\varphi \rightarrow \psi)$ , then  $T \models \psi$*

2. *If  $T \models \varphi(c_1, \dots, c_n)$  and the constants  $c_1, \dots, c_n$  occur neither in  $T$  nor in  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , then  $T \models \forall x_1 \dots x_n \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$*

*Proof.* 2. Let  $L' = L \setminus \{c_1, \dots, c_n\}$ . If the  $L'$ -structure is a model of  $T$  and  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  are arbitrary elements, then  $(\mathfrak{A}, a_1, \dots, a_n) \models \varphi(c_1, \dots, c_n)$ . This means  $\mathfrak{A} \models \forall x_1 \dots x_n \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ . □

$S$  and  $T$  are called **equivalent**,  $S \equiv T$ , if  $S$  and  $T$  have the same models

**Definition 1.17.** A consistent  $L$ -theory  $T$  is called **complete** if for all  $L$ -sentences  $\varphi$

$$T \models \varphi \quad \text{or} \quad T \models \neg\varphi$$

**Definition 1.18.** For a complete theory  $T$  we define

$$|T| = \max(|L|, \aleph_0)$$

The typical example of a complete theory is the theory of a structure  $\mathfrak{A}$

$$\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) = \{\varphi \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi\}$$

**Lemma 1.19.** *A consistent theory is complete iff it is maximal consistent, i.e., if it is equivalent to every consistent extension*

**Definition 1.20.** Two  $L$ -structures  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  are called **elementary equivalent**

$$\mathfrak{A} \equiv \mathfrak{B}$$

if they have the same theory

**Lemma 1.21.** *Let  $T$  be a consistent theory. Then the following are equivalent*

1.  $T$  is complete
2. All models of  $T$  are elementarily equivalent
3. There exists a structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  with  $T \equiv \text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$

*Proof.*  $1 \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 1$  □



## 2 Elementary Extensions and Compactness

### 2.1 Elementary substructures

Let  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$  be two  $L$ -structures. A map  $h : A \rightarrow B$  is called **elementary** if for all  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in A$  we have

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi[a_1, \dots, a_n] \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi[h(a_1), \dots, h(a_n)]$$

which is actually saying  $(\mathfrak{A}, a)_{a \in A} \equiv (\mathfrak{B}, a)_{a \in A}$ . We write

$$h : \mathfrak{A} \xrightarrow{\hookrightarrow} \mathfrak{B}$$

**Lemma 2.1.** *The models of  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$  are exactly the structures of the form  $(\mathfrak{B}, h(a))_{a \in A}$  for elementary embeddings  $h : \mathfrak{A} \xrightarrow{\hookrightarrow} \mathfrak{B}$*

We call  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$  the **elementary diagram** of  $\mathfrak{A}$

A substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$  of  $\mathfrak{B}$  is called **elementary** if the inclusion map is elementary. In this case we write

$$\mathfrak{A} < \mathfrak{B}$$

**Theorem 2.2** (Tarski's Test). *Let  $\mathfrak{B}$  be an  $L$ -structure and  $A$  a subset of  $B$ . Then  $A$  is the universe of an elementary substructure iff every  $L(A)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  which is satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{B}$  can be satisfied by an element of  $A$*

*Proof.* If  $\mathfrak{A} < \mathfrak{B}$  and  $\mathfrak{B} \models \exists x \varphi(x)$ , we also have  $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists x \varphi(x)$  and there exists  $a \in A$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a)$ . Thus  $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(a)$

Conversely, suppose that the condition of Tarski's test is satisfied. First we show that  $A$  is the universe of a substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$ . The  $L(A)$ -formula  $x \doteq x$  is satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{A}$ , so  $A$  is not empty. If  $f \in L$  is an  $n$ -ary function symbol ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  is from  $A$ , we consider the formula

$$\varphi(x) = f(a_1, \dots, a_n) \doteq x$$

Since  $\varphi(x)$  is always satisfied by an element of  $A$ , it follows that  $A$  is closed under  $f^{\mathfrak{B}}$

Now we show, by induction on  $\psi$ , that

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \psi \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{B} \models \psi$$

for all  $L(A)$ -sentences  $\psi$ .

For  $\psi = \exists x \varphi(x)$ . If  $\psi$  holds in  $\mathfrak{A}$ , there exists  $a \in A$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a)$ . The induction hypothesis yields  $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(x)$ , thus  $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi$ . For the converse suppose  $\psi$  holds in  $\mathfrak{B}$ . Then  $\varphi(x)$  is satisfied in  $\mathfrak{B}$  and by Tarski's test we find  $a \in A$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(a)$ . By induction  $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a)$  and  $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$   $\square$

We use Tarski's Test to construct small elementary substructures

**Corollary 2.3.** *Suppose  $S$  is a subset of the  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{B}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{B}$  has a elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$  containing  $S$  and of cardinality at most*

$$\max(|S|, |L|, \aleph_0)$$

*Proof.* We construct  $A$  as the union of an ascending sequence  $S_0 \subseteq S_1 \subseteq \dots$  of subsets of  $B$ . We start with  $S_0 = S$ . If  $S_i$  is already defined, we choose an element  $a_\varphi \in B$  for every  $L(S_i)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  which is satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{B}$  and define  $S_{i+1}$  to be  $S_i$  together with these  $a_\varphi$ .

An  $L$ -formula is a finite sequence of symbols from  $L$ , auxiliary symbols and logical symbols. These are  $|L| + \aleph_0 = \max(|L|, \aleph_0)$  many symbols and there are exactly  $\max(|L|, \aleph_0)$  many  $L$ -formulas

Let  $\kappa = \max(|S|, |L|, \aleph_0)$ . There are  $\kappa$  many  $L(S)$ -formulas: therefore  $|S_1| \leq \kappa$ . Inductively it follows for every  $i$  that  $|S_i| \leq \kappa$ . Finally we have  $|A| \leq \kappa \cdot \aleph_0 = \kappa$   $\square$

A directed family  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  of structures is **elementary** if  $\mathfrak{A}_i < \mathfrak{A}_j$  for all  $i \leq j$

**Theorem 2.4** (Tarski's Chain Lemma). *The union of an elementary directed family is an elementary extension of all its members*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{A} = \bigcup_{i \in I} (\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$ . We prove by induction on  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  that for all  $i$  and  $\bar{a} \in \mathfrak{A}_i$

$$\mathfrak{A}_i \models \varphi(\bar{a}) \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(\bar{a})$$

$\square$

*Exercise 2.1.1.* Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be an  $L$ -structure and  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  a chain of elementary substructures of  $\mathfrak{A}$ . Show that  $\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathfrak{A}_i$  is an elementary substructure of  $\mathfrak{A}$ .

*Exercise 2.1.2.* Consider a class  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $L$ -structures. Prove

1. Let  $\text{Th}(\mathcal{C}) = \{\varphi \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi \text{ for all } \mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}\}$  be the **theory** of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a model of  $\text{Th}(\mathcal{C})$  iff  $\mathfrak{M}$  is elementary equivalent to an ultraproduct of elements of  $\mathcal{C}$
2. Show that  $\mathcal{C}$  is an elementary class iff  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under ultraproduct and elementary equivalence
3. Assume that  $\mathcal{C}$  is a class of finite structures containing only finitely many structures of size  $n$  for each  $n \in \omega$ . Then the infinite models of  $\text{Th}(\mathcal{C})$  are exactly the models of

$$\text{Th}_a(\mathcal{C}) = \{\varphi \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi \text{ for all but finitely many } \mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}\}$$

*Proof.* Chang&Keisler p220

□

## 2.2 The Compactness Theorem

We call a theory  $T$  **finitely satisfiable** if every finite subset of  $T$  is consistent

**Theorem 2.5** (Compactness Theorem). *Finitely satisfiable theories are consistent*

Let  $L$  be a language and  $C$  a set of new constants. An  $L(C)$ -theory  $T'$  is called a **Henkin theory** if for every  $L(C)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  there is a constant  $c \in C$  s.t.

$$\exists x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \varphi(c) \in T'$$

The elements of  $C$  are called **Henkin constants** of  $T'$

An  $L$ -theory  $T$  is **finitely complete** if it is finitely satisfiable and if every  $L$ -sentence  $\varphi$  satisfies  $\varphi \in T$  or  $\neg\varphi \in T$

**Lemma 2.6.** *Every finitely satisfiable  $L$ -theory  $T$  can be extended to a finitely complete Henkin Theory  $T^*$*

Note that conversely the lemma follows directly from the Compactness Theorem. Choose a model  $\mathfrak{A}$  of  $T$ . Then  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$  is a finitely complete Henkin theory with  $A$  as a set of Henkin constants

*Proof.* We define an increasing sequence  $\emptyset = C_0 \subseteq C_1 \subseteq \dots$  of new constants by assigning to every  $L(C_i)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  a constant  $c_{\varphi(x)}$  and

$$C_{i+1} = \{c_{\varphi(x)} \mid \varphi(x) \text{ a } L(C_i)\text{-formula}\}$$

Let  $C$  be the union of the  $C_i$  and  $T^H$  the set of all Henkin axioms

$$\exists x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \varphi(c_{\varphi(x)})$$

for  $L(C)$ -formulas  $\varphi(x)$ . It is easy to see that one can expand every  $L$ -structure to a model of  $T^H$ . Hence  $T \cup T^H$  is a finitely satisfiable Henkin theory. Using the fact that the union of a chain of finitely satisfiable theories is also finite satisfiable, we can apply Zorn's Lemma and get a maximal finitely satisfiable  $L(C)$ -theory  $T^*$  which contains  $T \cup T^H$ . As in Lemma 1.19 we show that  $T^*$  is finitely complete: if neither  $\varphi$  nor  $\neg\varphi$  belongs to  $T^*$ , neither  $T^* \cup \{\varphi\}$  nor  $T^* \cup \{\neg\varphi\}$  would be finitely satisfiable. Hence there would be a finite subset  $\Delta$  of  $T^*$  which would be consistent neither with  $\varphi$  nor with  $\neg\varphi$ . Then  $\Delta$  itself would be inconsistent and  $T^*$  would not be finite satisfiable. This proves the lemma. □

**Lemma 2.7.** *Every finitely satisfiable  $L$ -theory  $T$  can be extended to a finitely complete Henkin theory  $T^*$*

**Lemma 2.8.** *Every finitely complete Henkin theory  $T^*$  has a model  $\mathfrak{A}$  (unique up to isomorphism) consisting of constants; i.e.,*

$$(\mathfrak{A}, a_c)_{c \in C} \models T^*$$

with  $A = \{a_c \mid c \in C\}$

*Proof.* Since  $T^*$  is finite complete, every sentence which follows from a finite subset of  $T^*$  belongs to  $T^*$

Define for  $c, d \in C$

$$c \simeq d \Leftrightarrow c \dot{=} d \in T^*$$

$\simeq$  is an equivalence relation. We denote the equivalence class of  $c$  by  $a_c$ , and set

$$A = \{a_c \mid c \in C\}$$

We expand  $A$  to an  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  by defining

$$R^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_{c_1}, \dots, a_{c_n}) \Leftrightarrow R(c_1, \dots, c_n) \in T^* \quad (\star)$$

$$f^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_{c_1}, \dots, a_{c_n}) \Leftrightarrow f(c_1, \dots, c_n) \dot{=} c_0 \in T^* \quad (\star\star)$$

We have to show that this is well-defined. For  $(\star)$  we have to show that

$$a_{c_1} = a_{d_1}, \dots, a_{c_n} = a_{d_n}, R(c_1, \dots, c_n) \in T^*$$

implies  $R(d_1, \dots, d_n) \in T^*$ , which is obvious.

For  $(\star\star)$ , we have to show that for all  $c_1, \dots, c_n$  there exists  $c_0$  with  $f(c_1, \dots, c_n) \dot{=} c_0 \in T^*$ .

Let  $\mathfrak{A}^*$  be the  $L(C)$ -structure  $(\mathfrak{A}, a_c)_{c \in C}$ . We show by induction on the complexity of  $\varphi$  that for every  $L(C)$ -sentence  $\varphi$

$$\mathfrak{A}^* \models \varphi \Leftrightarrow \varphi \in T^*$$

□

**Corollary 2.9.** *We have  $T \models \varphi$  iff  $\Delta \models \varphi$  for a finite subset  $\Delta$  of  $T$*

**Corollary 2.10.** *A set of formulas  $\Sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is consistent with  $T$  if and only if every finite subset of  $\Sigma$  is consistent with  $T$*

*Proof.* Introduce new constants  $c_1, \dots, c_n$ . Then  $\Sigma$  is consistent with  $T$  is and only if  $T \cup \Sigma(c_1, \dots, c_n)$  is consistent. Now apply the Compactness Theorem  $\square$

**Definition 2.11.** Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be an  $L$ -structure and  $B \subseteq A$ . Then  $a \in A$  **realises** a set of  $L(B)$ -formulas  $\Sigma(x)$  if  $a$  satisfied all formulas from  $\Sigma$ . We write

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \Sigma(a)$$

We call  $\Sigma(x)$  **finitely satisfiable** in  $\mathfrak{A}$  if every finite subset of  $\Sigma$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{A}$

**Lemma 2.12.** *The set  $\Sigma(x)$  is finitely satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{A}$  iff there is an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{A}$  in which  $\Sigma(x)$  is realised*

*Proof.* By Lemma 2.1  $\Sigma$  is realised in an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{A}$  iff  $\Sigma$  is consistent with  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$ . So the lemma follows from the observation that a finite set of  $L(A)$ -formulas is consistent with  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$  iff it is realised in  $\mathfrak{A}$   $\square$

**Definition 2.13.** Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be an  $L$ -structure and  $B$  a subset of  $A$ . A set  $p(x)$  of  $L(B)$ -formulas is a **type** over  $B$  if  $p(x)$  is maximal finitely satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{A}$  (satisfiable in an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{A}$ ). We call  $B$  the **domain** of  $p$ . Let

$$S(B) = S^{\mathfrak{A}}(B)$$

denote the set of types over  $B$ .

Every element  $a$  of  $\mathfrak{A}$  determines a type

$$\text{tp}(a/B) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{A}}(a/B) = \{\varphi(x) \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a), \varphi \text{ an } L(B)\text{-formula}\}$$

So an element  $a$  realises the type  $p \in S(B)$  exactly if  $p = \text{tp}(a/B)$ . If  $\mathfrak{A}'$  is an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{A}$ , then

$$S^{\mathfrak{A}}(B) = S^{\mathfrak{A}'}(B) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{A}'}(a/B) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{A}}(a/B)$$

If  $\mathfrak{A}' \models p(x)$  then  $\mathfrak{A}' \models \exists x p(x)$ , so  $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists x p(x)$ .

We use the notation  $\text{tp}(a)$  for  $\text{tp}(a/\emptyset)$

Maximal finitely satisfiable sets of formulas in  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  are called  **$n$ -types** and

$$S_n(B) = S_N^{\mathfrak{A}}(B)$$

denotes the set of  $n$ -types over  $B$ .

$$\text{tp}(C/B) = \{\varphi(x_{c_1}, \dots, x_{c_n}) \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(c_1, \dots, c_n), \varphi \text{ an } L(B)\text{-formula}\}$$

**Corollary 2.14.** *Every structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  has an elementary extension  $\mathfrak{B}$  in which all types over  $A$  are realised*

*Proof.* We choose for every  $p \in S(A)$  a new constant  $c_p$ . We have to find a model of

$$\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_A) \cup \bigcup_{p \in S(A)} p(c_p)$$

This theory is finitely satisfiable since every  $p$  is finitely satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{A}$ .

Or use Lemma 2.12. Let  $(p_\alpha)_{\alpha < \lambda}$  be an enumeration of  $S(A)$ . Construct an elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{A} = \mathfrak{A}_0 < \mathfrak{A}_1 < \dots < \mathfrak{A}_\beta < \dots (\beta \leq \lambda)$$

s.t. each  $p_\alpha$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{A}_{\alpha+1}$  (by recursion theorem on ordinal numbers)

Suppose that the elementary chain  $(\mathfrak{A}_{\alpha'})_{\alpha' < \beta}$  is already constructed. If  $\beta$  is a limit ordinal, we let  $\mathfrak{A}_\beta = \bigcup_{\alpha < \beta} \mathfrak{A}_\alpha$ , which is elementary by Lemma 2.4. If  $\beta = \alpha + 1$  we first note that  $p_\alpha$  is also finitely satisfiable in  $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha$ , therefore we can realise  $p_\alpha$  in a suitable elementary extension  $\mathfrak{A}_\beta > \mathfrak{A}_\alpha$  by Lemma 2.12. Then  $\mathfrak{B} = \mathfrak{A}_\lambda$  is the model we were looking for  $\square$

### 2.3 The Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem

**Theorem 2.15** (Löwenheim-Skolem). *Let  $\mathfrak{B}$  be an  $L$ -structure,  $S$  a subset of  $B$  and  $\kappa$  an infinite cardinal*

1. *If*

$$\max(|S|, |L|) \leq \kappa \leq |B|$$

*then  $\mathfrak{B}$  has an elementary substructure of cardinality  $\kappa$  containing  $S$*

2. *If  $\mathfrak{B}$  is infinite and*

$$\max(|\mathfrak{B}|, |L|) \leq \kappa$$

*then  $\mathfrak{B}$  has an elementary extension of cardinality  $\kappa$*

*Proof.* 1. Choose a set  $S \subseteq S' \subseteq B$  of cardinality  $\kappa$  and apply Corollary 2.3

2. We first construct an elementary extension  $\mathfrak{B}'$  of cardinality at least  $\kappa$ . Choose a set  $C$  of new constants of cardinality  $\kappa$ . As  $\mathfrak{B}$  is infinite, the theory

$$\text{Th}(\mathfrak{B}_B) \cup \{\neg c \doteq d \mid c, d \in C, c \neq d\}$$

is finitely satisfiable. By Lemma 2.1 any model  $(\mathfrak{B}'_B, b_c)_{c \in C}$  is an elementary extension of  $\mathcal{B}$  with  $\kappa$  many different elements  $(b_c)$

Finally we apply the first part of the theorem to  $\mathcal{B}'$  and  $S = B$

□

**Corollary 2.16.** *A theory which has an infinite model has a model in every cardinality  $\kappa \geq \max(|L|, \aleph_0)$*

**Definition 2.17.** Let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal. A theory  $T$  is called  $\kappa$ -categorical if for all models of  $T$  of cardinality  $\kappa$  are isomorphic

**Theorem 2.18** (Vaught's Test). *A  $\kappa$ -categorical theory  $T$  is complete if the following conditions are satisfied*

1.  $T$  is consistent
2.  $T$  has no finite model
3.  $|L| \leq \kappa$

*Proof.* We have to show that all models  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  of  $T$  are elementarily equivalent. As  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  are infinite,  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$  and  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{B})$  have models  $\mathfrak{A}'$  and  $\mathfrak{B}'$  of cardinality  $\kappa$ . By assumption  $\mathfrak{A}'$  and  $\mathfrak{B}'$  are isomorphic, and it follows that

$$\mathfrak{A} \equiv \mathfrak{A}' \equiv \mathfrak{B}' \equiv \mathfrak{B}$$

□

**Example 2.1.** 1. The theory DLO of dense linear orders without endpoints is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical and by Vaught's test complete. Let  $A = \{a_i \mid i \in \omega\}$ ,  $B = \{b_i \mid i \in \omega\}$ . We inductively define sequences  $(c_i)_{i < \omega}$ ,  $(d_i)_{i < \omega}$  exhausting  $A$  and  $B$ . Assume that  $(c_i)_{i < m}$ ,  $(d_i)_{i < m}$  have defined so that  $c_i \mapsto d_i, i < m$  is an order isomorphism. If  $m = 2k$  let  $c_m = a_j$  where  $a_j$  is the element with minimal index in  $\{a_i \mid i \in \omega\}$  not occurring in  $(c_i)_{i < m}$ . Since  $\mathfrak{B}$  is a dense linear order without endpoints there is some element  $d_m \in \{b_i \mid i \in \omega\}$  s.t.  $(c_i)_{i \leq m}$  and  $(d_i)_{i \leq m}$  are order isomorphic. If  $m = 2k + 1$  we interchange the roles of  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$

2. For any prime  $p$  or  $p = 0$ , the theory  $\text{ACF}_p$  of algebraically closed fields of characteristic  $p$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical for any  $\kappa > \aleph_0$

Consider the Theorem 2.18 we strengthen our definition

**Definition 2.19.** Let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal. A theory  $T$  is called  $\kappa$ -categorical if it is complete,  $|T| \leq \kappa$  and, up to isomorphism, has exactly one model of cardinality  $\kappa$

### 3 Quantifier Elimination

#### 3.1 Preservation theorems

**Lemma 3.1** (Separation Lemma). *Let  $T_1, T_2$  be two theories. Assume  $\mathcal{H}$  is a set of sentences which is closed under  $\wedge, \vee$  and contains  $\perp$  and  $\top$ . Then the following are equivalent*

1. *There is a sentence  $\varphi \in \mathcal{H}$  which separates  $T_1$  from  $T_2$ . This means*

$$T_1 \models \varphi \quad \text{and} \quad T_2 \models \neg\varphi$$

2. *All models  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  of  $T_1$  can be separated from all models  $\mathfrak{A}_2$  of  $T_2$  by a sentence  $\varphi \in \mathcal{H}$ . This means*

$$\mathfrak{A}_1 \models \varphi \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{A}_2 \models \neg\varphi$$

For 1, suppose  $T_1 = T \cup \{\psi\}$  and  $T_2 = T \cup \{\neg\psi\}$ . If  $T_1 \models \varphi$  and  $T_2 \models \neg\varphi$ , then  $T \models \psi \rightarrow \varphi$  and  $T \models \neg\psi \rightarrow \neg\varphi$  which is equivalent to  $T \models \varphi \rightarrow \psi$ . Thus we have  $T \models \varphi \leftrightarrow \psi$ .

*Proof.*  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . For any model  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  of  $T_1$  let  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathfrak{A}_1}$  be the set of all sentences from  $\mathcal{H}$  which are true in  $\mathfrak{A}_1$ . (2) implies that  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathfrak{A}_1}$  and  $T_2$  cannot have a common model. By the Compactness Theorem there is a finite conjunction  $\varphi_{\mathfrak{A}_1}$  of sentences from  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathfrak{A}_1}$  inconsistent with  $T_2$ . Clearly

$$T_1 \cup \{\neg\varphi_{\mathfrak{A}_1} \mid \mathfrak{A}_1 \models T_1\}$$

is inconsistent. Again by compactness  $T_1$  implies a disjunction  $\varphi$  of finitely many of the  $\varphi_{\mathfrak{A}_1}$  (Corollary 2.10) and

$$T_1 \models \varphi \quad \text{and} \quad T_2 \models \neg\varphi$$

□

For structures  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$  and a map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  preserving all formulas from a set of formulas  $\Delta$ , we use the notation

$$f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B}$$

We also write

$$\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B}$$

to express that all sentences from  $\Delta$  true in  $\mathfrak{A}$  are also true in  $\mathfrak{B}$



**Lemma 3.2.** *Let  $T$  be a theory,  $\mathfrak{A}$  a structure and  $\Delta$  a set of formulas, closed under existential quantification, conjunction and substitution of variables. Then the following are equivalent*

1. *All sentences  $\varphi \in \Delta$  which are true in  $\mathfrak{A}$  are consistent with  $T$*
2. *There is a model  $\mathfrak{B} \models T$  and a map  $f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B}$*

*Proof.*  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . Assume  $f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B} \models T$ . If  $\varphi \in \Delta$  is true in  $\mathfrak{A}$ , it is also true in  $\mathfrak{B}$  and therefore consistent with  $T$ .

$1 \rightarrow 2$ . Consider  $\text{Th}_{\Delta}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$ , the set of all sentences  $\delta(\bar{a})$  ( $\delta(\bar{x}) \in \Delta$ ), which are true in  $\mathfrak{A}_A$ . The models  $(\mathfrak{B}, f(a)_{a \in A})$  of this theory correspond to maps  $f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B}$ . **This means that we have to find a model of  $T \cup \text{Th}_{\Delta}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$ .** To show finite satisfiability it is enough to show that  $T \cup D$  is consistent for every finite subset  $D$  of  $\text{Th}_{\Delta}(\mathfrak{A}_A)$ . Let  $\delta(\bar{a})$  be the conjunction of the elements of  $D$ . Then  $\mathfrak{A}$  is a model of  $\varphi = \exists \bar{x} \delta(\bar{x})$ , so by assumption  $T$  has a model  $\mathfrak{B}$  which is also a model of  $\varphi$ . This means that there is a tuple  $\bar{b}$  s.t.  $(\mathfrak{B}, \bar{b}) \models \delta(\bar{a})$   $\square$

Lemma 3.2 applied to  $T = \text{Th}(\mathfrak{B})$  shows that  $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B}$  iff there exists a map  $f$  and a structure  $\mathfrak{B}' \equiv \mathfrak{B}$  s.t.  $f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\Delta} \mathfrak{B}'$

**Theorem 3.3.** *Let  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  be two theories. Then the following are equivalent*

1. *There is a universal sentence which separates  $T_1$  from  $T_2$*
2. *No model of  $T_2$  is a substructure of a model of  $T_1$*

*Proof.*  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . Let  $\varphi$  be a universal sentence which separates  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ . Let  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  be a model of  $T_1$  and  $\mathfrak{A}_2$  a substructure of  $\mathfrak{A}_1$ . Since  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  is a model of  $\varphi$ ,  $\mathfrak{A}_2$  is also a model of  $\varphi$ . Therefore  $\mathfrak{A}_2$  cannot be a model of  $T_2$

$2 \rightarrow 1$ . Here we add some details for the proof  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . If  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  cannot be separated by a universal sentence, then they have models  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{A}_2$  which cannot be separated by a universal sentence. That is, for all universal sentence  $\varphi$ , if  $\mathfrak{A}_1 \models \varphi$  then  $\mathfrak{A}_2 \models \varphi$ . Thus  $\mathfrak{A}_1 \Rightarrow_{\forall} \mathfrak{A}_2$ , here  $\Rightarrow_{\forall}$  means for all universal sentence.

Now note that

$$\mathfrak{A}_1 \models \varphi \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}_2 \models \varphi \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \mathfrak{A}_2 \models \neg\varphi \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}_1 \models \neg\varphi$$

and  $\neg\varphi$  is an existential sentence. Hence we have

$$\mathfrak{A}_2 \Rightarrow_{\exists} \mathfrak{A}_1$$

The reason that we want to use  $\exists$  is that it holds in the substructure case and we could imagine that  $\mathfrak{A}_2 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}_1$  (I guess this is our intuition). Now by Lemma 3.2 we have  $\mathfrak{A}'_1 \equiv \mathfrak{A}_1$  and a map  $f : \mathfrak{A}_2 \rightarrow_{\exists} \mathfrak{A}'_1$ . Apparently  $\mathfrak{A}'_1 \models \text{Diag}(\mathfrak{A}_2)$  and  $f$  is an embedding. Hence  $\mathfrak{A}'_1$  is a model of  $T_1$  and  $T_2$   $\square$

**Definition 3.4.** For any  $L$ -theory  $T$ , the formulas  $\varphi(\bar{x}), \psi(\bar{x})$  are said to be **equivalent modulo  $T$**  (or relative to  $T$ ) if  $T \models \forall \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}) \leftrightarrow \psi(\bar{x}))$

**Corollary 3.5.** *Let  $T$  be a theory*

1. *Consider a formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ . The following are equivalent*
  - (a)  *$\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to a universal formula*
  - (b) *If  $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}$  are models of  $T$  and  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in A$ , then  $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(a_1, \dots, a_n)$  implies  $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a_1, \dots, a_n)$*
2. *We say that a theory which consists of universal sentences is universal. Then  $T$  is equivalent to a universal theory iff all substructures of models of  $T$  are again models of  $T$*

*Proof.* 1. Assume (2). We extend  $L$  by an  $n$ -tuple  $\bar{c}$  of new constants  $c_1, \dots, c_n$  and consider theory

$$T_1 = T \cup \{\varphi(\bar{c})\} \quad \text{and} \quad T_2 = T \cup \{\neg\varphi(\bar{c})\}$$

Then (2) says the substructures of models of  $T_1$  cannot be models of  $T_2$ . By Theorem 3.3  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  can be separated by a universal  $L(\bar{c})$ -sentence  $\psi(\bar{c})$ . By Lemma 1.16,  $T_1 \models \psi(\bar{c})$  implies

$$T \models \forall \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \psi(\bar{x}))$$

and from  $T_2 \models \neg\psi(\bar{c})$  we see

$$T \models \forall \bar{x}(\neg\varphi(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \neg\psi(\bar{x}))$$

2. Suppose a theory  $T$  has this property. Let  $\varphi$  be an axiom of  $T$ . If  $\mathfrak{A}$  is a substructure of  $\mathfrak{B}$ , it is not possible for  $\mathfrak{B}$  to be a model of  $T$  and for  $\mathfrak{A}$  to be a model of  $\neg\varphi$  at the same time. By Theorem 3.3 there is a universal sentence  $\psi$  with  $T \models \psi$  and  $\neg\varphi \models \neg\psi$ . Hence all axioms of  $T$  follow from

$$T_{\forall} = \{\psi \mid T \models \psi, \psi \text{ universal}\}$$

$\square$

An  $\forall\exists$ -formula is of the form

$$\forall x_1 \dots x_n \psi$$

where  $\psi$  is existential

**Lemma 3.6.** Suppose  $\varphi$  is an  $\forall\exists$ -sentence,  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  is a directed family of models of  $\varphi$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  the union of the  $\mathfrak{A}_i$ . Then  $\mathfrak{B}$  is also a model of  $\varphi$ .

*Proof.* Write

$$\varphi = \forall \bar{x} \psi(\bar{x})$$

where  $\psi$  is existential. For any  $\bar{a} \in B$  there is an  $A_i$  containing  $\bar{a}$ , clearly  $\psi(\bar{a})$  holds in  $\mathfrak{A}_i$ . As  $\psi(\bar{a})$  is existential it must also hold in  $\mathfrak{B}$   $\square$

**Definition 3.7.** We call a theory  $T$  **inductive** if the union of any directed family of models of  $T$  is again a model

**Theorem 3.8.** Let  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  be two theories. Then the following are equivalent

1. there is an  $\forall\exists$ -sentence which separates  $T_1$  and  $T_2$
2. No model of  $T_2$  is the union of a chain (or of a directed family) of models of  $T_1$

*Proof.*  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . Assume  $\varphi$  is a  $\forall\exists$ -sentence which separates  $T_1$  from  $T_2$ ,  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)_{i \in I}$  is a directed family of models of  $\varphi$ , by Lemma 3.6  $\mathfrak{B}$  is also a model of  $\varphi$ . Since  $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$ ,  $\mathfrak{B}$  cannot be a model of  $T_2$

$2 \rightarrow 1$ . If (1) is not true, Suppose  $\mathfrak{A} \models T_1$  and  $\mathfrak{B}^0 \models T_2$ . Then

$$\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\forall\exists} \mathfrak{B}^0$$

Again we have

$$\mathfrak{B}^0 \Rightarrow_{\exists\forall} \mathfrak{A}$$

we have a map

$$f' : \mathfrak{B}^0 \rightarrow_{\exists\forall} \mathfrak{A}^0$$

where  $\mathfrak{A}^0 \equiv \mathfrak{A}$ . Since  $\forall$ -sentences are also  $\exists\forall$ -sentences, we thus have a map  $f : \mathfrak{B}^0 \rightarrow_{\forall} \mathfrak{A}^0$ .

Here we need to prove that  $\mathfrak{B}^0$  is isomorphic to a substructure of  $\mathfrak{A}^0$ , which is clear since  $f$  is an embedding. Then we can assume that  $\mathfrak{B}^0 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}^0$  and  $f$  is the inclusion map. Then

$$\mathfrak{A}_B^0 \Rightarrow_{\exists} \mathfrak{B}_B^0$$

(Here we are talking about existential sentences in the original language. If  $\mathfrak{B}^0 \models \exists \bar{x} \varphi(\bar{x})$  for some  $\varphi(\bar{x})$ , then  $\mathfrak{B}^0 \models \varphi(\bar{b})$ . So we can use constants  $B$  to talk about existential sentences) Applying Lemma 3.2 again, we obtain an extension  $\mathfrak{B}_B^1$  of  $\mathfrak{A}_B^0$  with  $\mathfrak{B}_B^1 \equiv \mathfrak{B}_B^0$ , i.e.  $\mathfrak{B}^0 < \mathfrak{B}^1$ . Hence we have an infinite chain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{B}^0 &\subseteq \mathfrak{A}^0 \subseteq^1 \mathfrak{B}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{B}^2 \subseteq \dots \\ \mathfrak{B}^0 &< \mathfrak{B}^1 < \mathfrak{B}^2 < \dots \\ \mathfrak{A}^i &\equiv \mathfrak{A} \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\mathfrak{B}$  be the union of the  $\mathfrak{A}^i$ . Since  $\mathfrak{B}$  is also the union of the elementary chain of the  $\mathfrak{B}^i$ , it is an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{B}^0$  and hence a model of  $T_2$ . But the  $\mathfrak{A}^i$  are models of  $T_1$ , so (2) does not hold  $\square$

**Corollary 3.9.** *Let  $T$  be a theory*

1. *For each sentence  $\varphi$  the following are equivalent*

- (a)  *$\varphi$  is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to an  $\forall\exists$ -sentence*
- (b) *If*

$$\mathfrak{A}^0 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}^1 \subseteq \dots$$

*and their union  $\mathfrak{B}$  are models of  $T$ , then  $\varphi$  holds in  $\mathfrak{B}$  if it is true in all the  $\mathfrak{A}^i$*

2.  *$T$  is inductive iff it can be axiomatised by  $\forall\exists$ -sentences*

*Proof.* 1. Theorem 3.6 shows that  $\forall\exists$ -formulas are preserved by unions of chains. Hence (a) $\Rightarrow$ (b). For the converse consider the theories

$$T_1 = T \cup \{\varphi\} \quad \text{and} \quad T_2 = T \cup \{\neg\varphi\}$$

Part (b) says that the union of a chain of models of  $T_1$  cannot be a model of  $T_2$ . By Theorem 3.8 we can separate  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  by an  $\forall\exists$ -sentence  $\psi$ . Hence  $T \cup \{\varphi\} \models \psi$  and  $T \cup \{\neg\varphi\} \models \neg\psi$

2. Clearly  $\forall\exists$ -axiomatised theories are inductive. For the converse assume that  $T$  is inductive and  $\varphi$  is an axiom of  $T$ . Ifpp  $\mathfrak{B}$  is a union of models of  $T$ , it cannot be a model of  $\neg\varphi$ . By Theorem 3.8 there is an  $\forall\exists$ -sentence  $\psi$  with  $T \models \psi$  and  $\neg\varphi \models \neg\psi$ . Hence all axioms of  $T$  follows from

$$T_{\forall\exists} = \{\psi \mid T \models \psi, \psi \text{ } \forall\exists\text{-formula}\}$$

$\square$

*Exercise 3.1.1.* Let  $X$  be a topological space,  $Y_1$  and  $Y_2$  quasi-compact (compact but not necessarily Hausdorff) subsets, and  $\mathcal{H}$  a set of clopen subsets. Then the following are equivalent

1. There is a positive Boolean combination  $B$  of elements from  $\mathcal{H}$  s.t.  $Y_1 \subseteq B$  and  $Y_2 \cap B = \emptyset$
2. For all  $y_1 \in Y_1$  and  $y_2 \in Y_2$  there is an  $H \in \mathcal{H}$  s.t.  $y_1 \in H$  and  $y_2 \notin H$

*Proof.*  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . Consider an element  $y_1 \in Y_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_{y_1}$ , the set of all elements of  $\mathcal{H}$  containing  $y_1$ . 2 implies that the intersection of the sets in  $\mathcal{H}_{y_1}$  is disjoint from  $Y_2$ . So a finite intersection  $h_{y_1}$  of elements of  $\mathcal{H}_{y_1}$  is disjoint from  $Y_2$ . The  $h_{y_i}, y_i \in Y_1$ , cover  $Y_1$ . So  $Y_1$  is contained in the union  $H$  of finitely many of the  $h_{y_i}$ . Hence  $H$  separates  $Y_1$  from  $Y_2$   $\square$

### 3.2 Quantifier elimination

**Definition 3.10.** A theory  $T$  has **quantifier elimination** if every  $L$ -formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  in the theory is equivalent modulo  $T$  to some quantifier-free formula  $\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$

For  $n = 0$ , this means that modulo  $T$  every sentence is equivalent to a quantifier-free sentence. If  $L$  has no constants,  $\top$  and  $\perp$  are the only quantifier free sentences. Then  $T$  is either inconsistent or complete.

It's easy to transform any theory  $T$  into a theory with quantifier elimination if one is willing to expand the language: just enlarge  $L$  by adding an  $n$ -place relation symbol  $R_\varphi$  for every  $L$ -formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and  $T$  by adding all axioms

$$\forall x_1, \dots, x_n (R_\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n) \leftrightarrow \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n))$$

The resulting theory, the **Morleyisation**  $T^m$  of  $T$ , has quantifier elimination

A **prime structure** of  $T$  is a structure which embeds into all models of  $T$

**Lemma 3.11.** *A consistent theory  $T$  with quantifier elimination which possess a prime structure is complete*

*Proof.* If  $\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N} \models T$  and  $\mathfrak{M} \models \varphi$  and  $\mathfrak{N} \models \neg\varphi$ . Suppose prime structure is  $\mathfrak{H}$ , then  $\mathfrak{H} \models \varphi$  and  $\mathfrak{H} \models \neg\varphi$  since we have quantifier elimination  $\square$

**Definition 3.12.** A **simple existential formula** has the form

$$\varphi = \exists y \rho$$

for a quantifier-free formula  $\rho$ . If  $\rho$  is a conjunction of basic formulas,  $\varphi$  is called **primitive existential**

**Lemma 3.13.** *The theory  $T$  has quantifier elimination iff every primitive existential formula is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to a quantifier-free formula*

*Proof.* We can write every simple existential formula in the form  $\exists y \bigvee_{i < n} \rho_i$  for  $\rho_i$  which are conjunctions of basic formulas. This shows that every simple existential formula is equivalent to a disjunction of primitive existential formulas, namely to  $\bigvee_{i < n} (\exists y \rho_i)$ . We can therefore assume that every simple existential formula is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to a quantifier-free formula

We are now able to eliminate the quantifiers in arbitrary formulas in prenex normal form (Exercise 1.2.1)

$$Q_1 x_1 \dots Q_n x_n \rho$$

if  $Q_n = \exists$ , we choose a quantifier-free formula  $\rho_0$  which, modulo  $T$ , is equivalent to  $\exists x_n \rho$  and proceed with the formula  $Q_1 x_1 \dots Q_{n-1} x_{n-1} \rho_0$ . If  $Q_n = \forall$ , we find a quantifier-free  $\rho_1$  which is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to  $\exists x_n \neg \rho$  and proceed with  $Q_1 x_1 \dots Q_{n-1} x_{n-1} \neg \rho_1$   $\square$

**Theorem 3.14.** *For a theory  $T$  the following are equivalent*

1.  $T$  has quantifier elimination
2. For all models  $\mathfrak{M}^1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^2$  of  $T$  with a common substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$  we have

$$\mathfrak{M}_A^1 \equiv \mathfrak{M}_A^2$$

3. For all models  $\mathfrak{M}^1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^2$  of  $T$  with a common substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$  and for all primitive existential formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and parameter  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  from  $A$  we have

$$\mathfrak{M}^1 \models \varphi(a_1, \dots, a_n) \Rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^2 \models \varphi(a_1, \dots, a_n)$$

(this is exactly the equivalence relation)

If  $L$  has no constants,  $\mathfrak{A}$  is allowed to be the empty “structure”

*Proof.*  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . Let  $\varphi(\bar{a})$  be an  $L(A)$ -sentence which holds in  $\mathfrak{M}^1$ . Choose a quantifier-free  $\rho(\bar{x})$  which is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to  $\varphi(\bar{x})$ . Then

$$\begin{array}{llllll} \mathfrak{M}^1 & \models & \varphi(\bar{a}) & \Rightarrow & \mathfrak{M}^1 & \models & \rho(\bar{a}) \\ & & & \Rightarrow & \mathfrak{A} & \models & \rho(\bar{a}) \\ \mathfrak{M}^2 & \models & \rho(\bar{a}) & \Rightarrow & \mathfrak{M}^2 & \models & \varphi(\bar{a}) \end{array} \Rightarrow$$

3  $\rightarrow$  1. Let  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  be a primitive existential formula. In order to show that  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  is equivalent, modulo  $T$ , to a quantifier-free formula  $\rho(\bar{x})$  we extend  $L$  by an  $n$ -tuple  $\bar{c}$  of new constants  $c_1, \dots, c_n$ . **We have to show that we can separate  $T \cup \{\varphi(\bar{c})\}$  and  $T \cup \{\neg\varphi(\bar{c})\}$  by a quantifier free sentence  $\rho(\bar{c})$ .** Then  $T \models \varphi(\bar{c}) \rightarrow \rho(\bar{c})$  and  $T \models \neg\varphi(\bar{c}) \rightarrow \neg\rho(\bar{c})$ . Hence  $T \models \varphi(\bar{c}) \leftrightarrow \rho(\bar{c})$ .

We apply the Separation Lemma ( $\mathcal{H}$  hear is the set of quantifier-free sentence). Let  $\mathfrak{M}^1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^2$  be two models of  $T$  with two distinguished  $n$ -tuples  $\bar{a}^1$  and  $\bar{a}^2$ . Suppose that  $(\mathfrak{M}^1, \bar{a}^1)$  and  $(\mathfrak{M}^2, \bar{a}^2)$  satisfy the same quantifier-free  $L(\bar{c})$ -sentences. We have to show that

$$\mathfrak{M}^1 \models \varphi(\bar{a}^1) \Rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^2 \models \varphi(\bar{a}^2) \quad (\star)$$

which says that if  $T$ 's model  $\mathfrak{A}_1, \mathfrak{A}_2$  satisfies the same quantifier-free sentences, then  $\mathfrak{M}^1 \Rightarrow_{\exists} \mathfrak{M}^2$ . If  $\mathfrak{M}^1 \models T \cup \{\varphi(\bar{c})\}$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^2 \models T \cup \{\neg\varphi(\bar{c})\}$  and satisfy the same quantifier-free  $L(\bar{c})$  sentence, then  $\mathfrak{M}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{M}^2$ , a contradiction. Thus we finish the proof

Consider the substructure  $\mathfrak{A}^i = \langle \bar{a}^i \rangle^{\mathfrak{M}^i}$ , generated by  $\bar{a}^i$ . If we can show that there is an isomorphism

$$f : \mathfrak{A}^1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}^2$$

taking  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{a}$ , we may assume that  $\mathfrak{A}^1 = \mathfrak{A}^2 = \mathfrak{A}$  and  $\bar{a}^1 = \bar{a}^2 = \bar{a}$ . Then  $\star$  follows directly from 3.

Every element of  $\mathfrak{A}^1$  has the form  $t^{\mathfrak{M}^1}[\bar{a}^1]$  for an  $L$ -term  $t(\bar{x})$ . The isomorphism  $f$  to be constructed must satisfy

$$f(t^{\mathfrak{M}^1}[\bar{a}^1]) = t^{\mathfrak{M}^2}[\bar{a}^2]$$

We define  $f$  by this equation and have to check that  $f$  is well defined and injective. Assume

$$s^{\mathfrak{M}^1}[\bar{a}^1] = t^{\mathfrak{M}^1}[\bar{a}f^1]$$

Then  $\mathfrak{M}^1, \bar{a}^1 \models s(\bar{c}) \doteq t(\bar{c})$ , and by our assumption,  $\mathfrak{M}^1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^2$  satisfy the same quantifier-free  $L(\bar{c})$ -sentence, it also holds in  $(\mathfrak{M}^2, \bar{a}^2)$ , which means

$$s^{\mathfrak{M}^2}[\bar{a}^2] = t^{\mathfrak{M}^2}[\bar{a}^2]$$

Swapping the two sides yields injectivity.

Surjectivity is clear. It remains to show that  $f$  commutes with the interpretation of the relation symbols. Now

$$\mathfrak{M}^1 \models R[t_1^{\mathfrak{M}^1}[\bar{a}^1], \dots, t_m^{\mathfrak{M}^1}[\bar{a}^1]]$$

is equivalent to  $(\mathfrak{M}^1, \bar{a}^1) \models R(t_1(\bar{c}), \dots, t_m(\bar{c}))$ , which is equivalent to  $(\mathfrak{M}^2, \bar{a}^2) \models R(t_1(\bar{c}), \dots, t_m(\bar{c}))$ , which in turn is equivalent to

$$\mathfrak{M}^2 \models R[t_1^{\mathfrak{M}^2}[\bar{a}^2], \dots, t_m^{\mathfrak{M}^2}[\bar{a}^2]]$$

□

Note that (2) of Theorem 3.14 is saying that  $T$  is **substructure complete**; i.e., for any model  $\mathfrak{M} \models T$  and substructure  $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{M}$  the theory  $T \cup \text{Diag}(\mathfrak{A})$  is complete

**Definition 3.15.** We call  $T$  **model complete** if for all models  $\mathfrak{M}^1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^2$  of  $T$

$$\mathfrak{M}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{M}^2 \Rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^1 < \mathfrak{M}^2$$

$T$  is model complete iff for any  $\mathfrak{M} \models T$  the theory  $T \cup \text{Diag}(\mathfrak{M})$  is complete

Note that if  $\mathfrak{M}_1 \models \text{Diag}(\mathfrak{M})$ , then there is an embedding  $h : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  is isomorphic to an extension  $\mathfrak{M}'_1$  of  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Then we have  $\mathfrak{M} \subseteq \mathfrak{M}'_1$ .

So here we are actually saying that all embeddings are elementary

**Lemma 3.16** (Robinson's Test). *Let  $T$  be a theory. Then the following are equivalent*

1.  $T$  is model complete
2. For all models  $\mathfrak{M}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{M}^2$  of  $T$  and all existential sentences  $\varphi$  from  $L(M^1)$

$$\mathfrak{M}^2 \models \varphi \Rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^1 \models \varphi$$

3. Each formula is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to a universal formula

*Proof.*  $1 \leftrightarrow 3$ . Corollary 3.5

(2) and Corollary 3.5 shows that all existential sentences are, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to a universal sentence. Then by induction we can show 3. (Details) □

If  $\mathfrak{M}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{M}^2$  satisfies (2), we call  $\mathfrak{M}^1$  **existentially closed** in  $\mathfrak{M}^2$ . We denote this by

$$\mathfrak{M}^1 <_1 \mathfrak{M}^2$$

**Definition 3.17.** Let  $T$  be a theory. A theory  $T^*$  is a **model companion** of  $T$  if the following three conditions are satisfied



1. Each model of  $T$  can be extended to a model of  $T^*$
2. Each model of  $T^*$  can be extended to a model of  $T$
3.  $T^*$  is model complete

**Theorem 3.18.** *A theory  $T$  has, up to equivalence, at most one model companion  $T^*$*

*Proof.* If  $T^+$  is another model companion of  $T$ , every model of  $T^+$  is contained in a model of  $T^*$  and conversely. Let  $\mathfrak{A}_0 \models T^+$ . Then  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  can be embedded in a model  $\mathfrak{B}_0$  of  $T^*$ . In turn  $\mathfrak{B}_0$  is contained in a model  $\mathfrak{A}_1$  of  $T^+$ . In this way we find two elementary chains  $(\mathfrak{A}_i)$  and  $(\mathfrak{B}_i)$ , which have a common union  $\mathfrak{C}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{A}_0 < \mathfrak{C}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}_0 < \mathfrak{C}$  implies  $\mathfrak{A}_0 \equiv \mathfrak{B}_0$  since  $T$  are all sentences. Thus  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  is a model of  $T^*$   $\square$

### Existentially closed structures and the Kaiser hull

Let  $T$  be an  $L$ -theory. It follows from 3.3 that the models of  $T_\forall = \{\varphi \mid T \models \varphi \text{ where } \varphi \text{ is universal}\}$  are the substructures of models of  $T$ . The conditions (1) and (2) in the definition of “model companion” can therefore be expressed as

$$T_\forall = T_\forall^*$$

(1 and 2 says  $\text{Mod}(T_\forall) = \text{Mod}(T_\forall^*)$ ) Hence the model companion of a theory  $T$  depends only on  $T_\forall$ .

**Definition 3.19.** An  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  is called  $T$ -**existentially closed** (or  $T$ -**ec**) if

1.  $\mathfrak{A}$  can be embedded in a model of  $T$
2.  $\mathfrak{A}$  is existentially closed in every extension which is a model of  $T$

A structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  is  $T$ -ec exactly if it is  $T_\forall$ -ec. Since every model of  $\mathfrak{B}$  of  $T_\forall$  can be embedded in a model  $\mathfrak{M}$  of  $T$  and  $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B} \subseteq \mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{A} <_1 \mathfrak{M}$  implies  $\mathfrak{A} <_1 \mathfrak{B}$

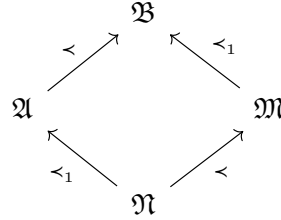
**Lemma 3.20.** *Every model of a theory  $T$  can be embedded in a  $T$ -ec structure*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be a model of  $T_\forall$ . We choose an enumeration  $(\varphi_\alpha)_{\alpha < \kappa}$  of all existential  $L(A)$ -sentences and construct an ascending chain  $(\mathfrak{A}_\alpha)_{\alpha \leq \kappa}$  of models of  $T_\forall$ . We begin with  $\mathfrak{A}_0 = \mathfrak{A}$ . Let  $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha$  be constructed. If  $\varphi_\alpha$  holds in an extension of  $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha$  which is a model of  $T$  we let  $\mathfrak{A}_{\alpha+1}$  be such a model. Otherwise

we set  $\mathfrak{A}_{\alpha+1} = \mathfrak{A}_\alpha$ . For limit ordinals  $\lambda$  we define  $\mathfrak{A}_\lambda$  to be the union of all  $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha$ .  $\mathfrak{A}_\lambda$  is again a model of  $T_\forall$ .

The structure  $\mathfrak{A}^1 = \mathfrak{A}_\kappa$  has the following property: every existential  $L(A)$ -sentence which holds in an extension of  $\mathfrak{A}^1$  that is a model of  $T$  holds in  $\mathfrak{A}^1$ . Now in the same manner, we construct  $\mathfrak{A}^2$  from  $\mathfrak{A}^1$ , etc. The union  $\mathfrak{M}$  of the chain  $\mathfrak{A}^0 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}^1 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}^2 \subseteq \dots$  is the desired  $T$ -ec structure  $\square$

Every elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{N}$  of a  $T$ -ec structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is again  $T$ -ec: Let  $\mathfrak{N} \subseteq \mathfrak{A}$  be a model of  $T$ . Since  $\mathfrak{M}_N \Rightarrow_{\exists} \mathfrak{A}_N$ , there is an embedding of  $\mathfrak{M}$  in an elementary extension  $\mathfrak{B}$  of  $\mathfrak{A}$  which is the identity on  $N$ . Since  $\mathfrak{M}$  is existentially closed in  $\mathfrak{B}$ , it follows that  $\mathfrak{N}$  is existentially closed in  $\mathfrak{B}$  and therefore also in  $\mathfrak{A}$ .



**Lemma 3.21.** *Let  $T$  be a theory. Then there is a biggest inductive theory  $T^{KH}$  with  $T_\forall = T_\forall^{KH}$ . We call  $T^{KH}$  the **Kaiser hull** of  $T$*

*Proof.* Let  $T^1$  and  $T^2$  be two inductive theories with  $T_\forall^1 = T_\forall^2 = T_\forall$ . We have to show that  $(T^1 \cup T^2)_\forall = T_\forall$ . Note that for every model  $\mathfrak{A} \models T^1$  and  $\mathfrak{B} \models T^2$  we have  $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_\forall \mathfrak{B}$  and vice versa. Then we have the embeddings just like model companions. Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$ , as in the proof of 3.18 we extend  $\mathfrak{M}$  by a chain  $\mathfrak{A}_0 \subseteq \mathfrak{B}_0 \subseteq \mathfrak{A}_1 \subseteq \mathfrak{B}_1 \subseteq \dots$  of models of  $T^1$  and  $T^2$ . The union of this chain is a model of  $T^1 \cup T^2$   $\square$

**Lemma 3.22.** *The Kaiser hull  $T^{KH}$  is the  $\forall\exists$ -part of the theory of all  $T$ -ec structures*

*Proof.* Let  $T^*$  be the  $\forall\exists$ -part of the theory of all  $T$ -ec structures. Since  $T$ -ec structures are models of  $T_\forall$ , we have  $T_\forall \subseteq T_\forall^*$ . It follows from 3.20 that  $T_\forall^* \subseteq T_\forall$ . Hence  $T^*$  is contained in the Kaiser Hull.

It remains to show that every  $T$ -ec structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a model of the Kaiser hull. Choose a model  $\mathfrak{N}$  of  $T^{KH}$  which contains  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M} <_1 \mathfrak{N}$ . This implies  $\mathfrak{N} \Rightarrow_{\forall\exists} \mathfrak{M}$  and therefore  $\mathfrak{M} \models T^{KH}$   $\square$

This implies that  $T$ -ec strctures are models of  $T_{\forall\exists}$

**Theorem 3.23.** *For any theory  $T$  the following are equivalent*

1.  $T$  has a model companion  $T^*$
2. All models of  $K^{\text{KH}}$  are  $T$ -ec
3. The  $T$ -ec structures form an elementary class.

*If  $T^*$  exists, we have*

$$T^* = T^{\text{KH}} = \text{theory of all } T\text{-ec structures}$$

*Proof.*  $1 \rightarrow 2$ : let  $T^*$  be the model companion of  $T$ . As a model complete theory

$3 \rightarrow 1$ : Assume that the  $T$ -ec structures are exactly the models of the theory  $T^+$ . By 3.20 we have  $T_{\forall} = T_{\forall}^+$ . Criterion 3.16 implies that  $T^+$  is model complete. So  $T^+$  is the model companion of  $T$ .  $\square$

*Exercise 3.2.1.* Let  $L$  be the language containing a unary function  $f$  and a binary relation symbol  $R$  and consider the  $L$ -theory  $T = \{\forall x \forall y (R(x, y) \rightarrow (R(x, f(y))))\}$ . Showing the following

1. For any  $T$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $a, b \in M$  with  $b \notin \{a, f^{\mathfrak{M}}(a), (f^{\mathfrak{M}})^2(a), \dots\}$  we have  $\mathfrak{M} \models \exists z (R(z, a) \wedge \neg R(z, b))$
2. Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$  and  $a$  an element of  $M$  s.t.  $\{a, f^{\mathfrak{M}}(a), (f^{\mathfrak{M}})^2(a), \dots\}$  is infinite. Then in an elementary extension  $\mathfrak{M}'$  there is an element  $b$  with  $\mathfrak{M}' \models \forall z (R(z, a) \rightarrow R(z, b))$
3. The class of  $T$ -ec structures is not elementary, so  $T$  does not have a model companion

*Exercise 3.2.2.* A theory  $T$  with quantifier elimination is axiomatisable by sentences of the form

$$\forall x_1 \dots x_n \psi$$

where  $\psi$  is primitive existential formula

### 3.3 Examples

**Infinite sets.** The models of the theory  $\text{Infset}$  of **infinite sets** are all infinite sets without additional structure. The language  $L_{\emptyset}$  is empty, the axioms are (for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ )

- $\exists x_0 \dots x_{n-1} \bigwedge_{i < j < n} \neg x_i \doteq x_j$

**Theorem 3.24.** *The theory Infset of infinite sets has quantifier elimination and is complete*

*Proof.* Since the language is empty, the only basic formula is  $x_i = x_j$  and  $\neg(x_i = x_j)$ . By Lemma 3.13 we only need to consider primitive existential formulas. Then for any  $\mathfrak{M}^1, \mathfrak{M}^2 \models \text{Infset}$ , they have a common substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$  with  $\omega$  different elements. Suppose  $\mathfrak{M}^1 \models \exists x \varphi(x)$ ,  $\square$

**Dense linear orderings.**

$$\begin{aligned} \forall a, b (a \leq b \wedge b \leq a \rightarrow a \dot{=} b) \\ \forall a, b, c (a \leq b \wedge b \leq c \rightarrow a \leq c) \\ \forall a, b (a \leq b \vee b \leq a) \\ \forall a, b \exists c (a < b \rightarrow a < c < b) \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 3.25.** *DLO has quantifier elimination*

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be a finite common substructure of the two models  $O_1$  and  $O_2$ . We choose an ascending enumeration  $A = \{a_1, \dots, a_n\}$ . Let  $\exists y \rho(y)$  be a simple existential  $L(A)$ -sentence, which is true in  $O_1$  and assume  $O_1 \models \rho(b_1)$ . We want to extend the order preserving map  $a_i \mapsto a_i$  to an order preserving map  $A \cup \{b_1\} \rightarrow O_2$ . For this we have an image  $b_2$  of  $b_1$ . There are four cases

1.  $b_1 \in A$ , we set  $b_2 = b_1$
2.  $b_1 \in (a_i, a_{i+1})$ . We choose  $b_2$  in  $O_2$  with the same property
3.  $b_1$  is smaller than all elements of  $A$ . We choose a  $b_2 \in O_2$  of the same kind
4.  $b_1$  is bigger than all  $a_i$ . Choose  $b_2$  in the same manner

This defines an isomorphism  $A \cup \{b_1\} \rightarrow A \cup \{b_2\}$ , which show that  $O_2 \models \rho(b_2)$   $\square$

**Modules.** Let  $R$  be a (possibly non-commutative) ring with 1. An  $R$ -module

$$\mathfrak{M} = (\cdot, 0, +, -, r)_{r \in R}$$

is an abelian group  $(M, 0, +, -)$  together with operations  $r : M \rightarrow M$  for every ring element  $r \in R$ . We formulate the axioms in the language

$L_{Mod}(R) = L_{AbG} \cup \{r \mid r \in R\}$ . The theory  $Mod(R)$  of  $R$ -modules consists of

AbG

$$\forall x, y \ r(x + y) \doteq rx + ry$$

$$\forall x \ (r + s)x \doteq rx + sx$$

$$\forall x \ (rs)x \doteq r(sx)$$

$$\forall x \ 1x \doteq x$$

for all  $r, s \in R$ . Then  $Infset \cup Mod(R)$  is the theory of all infinite  $R$ -modules  
A module over fields is a vector space

**Theorem 3.26.** *Let  $K$  be a field. Then the theory of all infinite  $K$ -vector spaces has quantifier elimination and is complete*

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be a common finitely generated substructure (i.e., a subspace) of the two infinite  $K$ -vector spaces  $V_1$  and  $V_2$ . Let  $\exists y \rho(y)$  be a simple existential  $L(A)$ -sentence which holds in  $V_1$ . Choose a  $b_1$  from  $V_1$  which satisfies  $\rho(y)$ . If  $b_1$  belongs to  $A$ , we finished. If not, we choose a  $b_2 \in V_2 \setminus A$ . Possibly we have to replace  $V_2$  by an elementary extension. The vector spaces  $A + Kb_1$  and  $A + Kb_2$  are isomorphic by an isomorphism which maps  $b_1$  to  $b_2$  and fixes  $A$  elementwise. Hence  $V_2 \models \rho(b_2)$   $\square$

**Definition 3.27.** An **equation** is an  $L_{Mod}(R)$ -formula  $\gamma(\bar{x})$  of the form

$$r_1x_1 + \dots + r_mx_m = 0$$

A **positive primitive formula** (**pp-formula**) is of the form

$$\exists \bar{y} (\gamma_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \gamma_n)$$

where the  $\gamma_i(\bar{x}\bar{y})$  are equations

**Theorem 3.28.** *For every ring  $R$  and any  $R$ -module  $M$ , every  $L_{Mod}(R)$ -formula is equivalent (modulo the theory of  $M$ ) to a Boolean combination of positive primitive formulas*

*Remark.* 1. We assume the class of positive primitive formulas to be closed under  $\wedge$

2. A pp-formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  defines a subgroup  $\varphi(M^n)$  of  $M^n$ :

$$M \models \varphi(0) \quad \text{and} \quad M \models \varphi(x) \wedge \varphi(y) \rightarrow \varphi(x - y)$$

**Lemma 3.29.** Let  $\varphi(x, y)$  be a pp-formula and  $a \in M$ . Then  $\varphi(M, a)$  is empty or a coset of  $\varphi(M, 0)$

*Proof.*  $M \models \varphi(x, a) \rightarrow (\varphi(y, 0) \leftrightarrow \varphi(x + y, a))$

Or, if  $x, y \in \varphi(M, a)$ , then  $\varphi(x - y, 0)$ . □

**Corollary 3.30.** Let  $a, b \in M$ ,  $\varphi(x, y)$  a pp-formula. Then (in  $M$ )  $\varphi(x, a)$  and  $\varphi(x, b)$  are equivalent or contradictory

**Lemma 3.31** (B. H. Neumann). Let  $H_i$  denote subgroups of some abelian group. If  $H_0 + a_0 \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^n H_i + a_i$  and  $H_0/(H_0 \cap H_i)$  is infinite for  $i > k$ , then  $H_0 + a_0 \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^k H_i + a_i$

**Lemma 3.32.** Let  $A_i, i \leq k$ , be any sets. If  $A_0$  is finite, then  $A_0 \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^k A_i$  iff

$$\sum_{\Delta \subseteq \{1, \dots, k\}} (-1)^{|\Delta|} \left| A_0 \cap \bigcap_{i \in \Delta} A_i \right| = 0$$

**Algebraically closed fields.**

**Theorem 3.33** (Tarski). The theory ACF of algebraically closed fields has quantifier elimination

1#+BEGIN<sub>proof</sub> Let  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  be two algebraically closed fields and  $R$  a common subring. **There may not be such a thing since, e.g.,  $\mathbb{Q}$  doesn't have a subfield** Let  $\exists y \rho(y)$  be a simple existential sentence with parameters in  $R$  which hold in  $K_1$ . We have to show that  $\exists y \rho(y)$  is also true in  $K_2$ .

Let  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  be the quotient fields of  $R$  in  $K_1$  and  $K_2$ , and let  $f : F_1 \rightarrow F_2$  be an isomorphism which is the identity on  $R$ . Then  $f$  extends to an isomorphism  $g : G_1 \rightarrow G_2$  between the relative algebraic closures  $G_i$  of  $F_i$  in  $K_i$ . Choose an element  $b_1 \in K_1$  which satisfies  $\rho(y)$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K_1 & & K_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G_1(b_1) & & \\ \downarrow & \xrightarrow{g} & \downarrow \\ G_1 & & G_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ F_1 & \xrightarrow{f} & F_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ R & \xrightarrow{id} & R \end{array}$$

There are two cases

Case 1:  $b_1 \in G_1$ . Then  $b_2 = g(b_1)$  satisfies the formula  $\rho(y)$  in  $K_2$

Case 2:  $b_1 \notin G_1$ . Then  $b_1$  is transcendental over  $G$  and the field extension  $G_1(b_1)$  is isomorphic to the rational function field  $G_1(X)$ . If  $K_2$  is a proper extension of  $G_2$ , we choose any element from  $K_2 \setminus G_2$  for  $b_2$ . Then  $g$  extends to an isomorphism between  $G_1(b_1)$  and  $G_2(b_2)$  which maps  $b_1$  to  $b_2$ . Hence  $b_2$  satisfies  $\rho(y)$  in  $K_2$ . In case that  $K_2 = G_2$  we take a proper elementary extension  $K'_2$  of  $K_2$  (Such a  $K'_2$  exists by 2.15 since  $K_2$  is infinite). Then  $\exists y \rho(y)$  holds in  $K'_2$  and therefore in  $K_2$  #+END<sub>proof</sub>

**Corollary 3.34.** *ACF is model complete*

ACF is not complete: for prime numbers  $p$  let

$$\text{ACF}_p = \text{ACF} \cup \{p \cdot 1 \doteq 0\}$$

be the theory of algebraically closed fields of characteristic  $p$  and

$$\text{ACF}_0 = \text{ACF} \cup \{\neg n \cdot 1 \doteq 0 \mid n = 1, 2, \dots\}$$

be the theory of algebraically closed fields of characteristic 0.

**Corollary 3.35.** *The theories  $\text{ACF}_p$  and  $\text{ACF}_0$  are complete*

*Proof.* This follows from Lemma 3.11 since the prime fields are prime structures for these theories □

**Corollary 3.36** (Hilbert's Nullstellensatz). *Let  $K$  be a field. Then any proper ideal  $I$  in  $K[X_1, \dots, X_n]$  has a zero in the algebraic closure  $\text{acl}(K)$*

*Proof.* As a proper ideal,  $I$  is contained in a maximal ideal  $P$ . Then  $L = K[X_1, \dots, X_n]/P$  is an extension field of  $K$  in which the cosets of the  $X_i$  are a zero of  $I$ . □

**Real closed fields.** It is axiomatised in the language  $L_{\text{ORing}}$  of ordered rings

**Theorem 3.37** (Tarski-Seidenberg). *RCF has quantifier elimination and is complete*

*Proof.* Let  $(K_1, <)$  and  $(K_2, <)$  be two real closed field with a common subring  $R$ . Consider an  $L_{\text{ORing}}(R)$ -sentence  $\exists y \rho(y)$  (for a quantifier-free  $\rho$ ), which holds in  $(K_1, <)$ . We have to show  $\exists y \rho(y)$  also holds in  $(K_2, <)$

We build first the quotient fields  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  of  $R$  in  $K_1$  and  $K_2$ . By ?? there is an isomorphism  $f : (F_1, <) \rightarrow (F_2, <)$  which fixes  $R$ . The relative algebraic closure  $G_i$  of  $F_i$  in  $K_i$  is a real closure of  $(F_i, <)$ . By ??  $f$  extends to an isomorphism  $g : (G_1, <) \rightarrow (G_2, <)$

Let  $b_1 \in K_1$  which satisfies  $\rho(y)$ . There are two cases

Case 1:  $b_1 \in G_1$ : Then  $b_2 = g(b_1)$  satisfies  $\rho(y)$  in  $K_2$

Case 2:  $b_1 \notin G_1$ . Then  $b_1$  is transcendental over  $G_1$  and the field extension  $G_1(b_1)$  is isomorphic to the rational function field  $G_1(X)$ . Let  $G_1^l$  be the set of all elements of  $G_1$  which are smaller than  $b_1$ , and  $G_1^r$  be the set of all elements of  $G_1$  which are larger than  $b_1$ . Then all elements of  $G_2^l = g(G_1^l)$  are smaller than all elements of  $G_2^r = g(G_1^r)$ . Since fields are densely ordered, we find in an elementary extension  $(K_2', <)$  of  $(K_2, <)$  an element  $b_2$  which lies between the elements of  $G_2^l$  and the elements of  $G_2^r$ . Since  $b_2$  is not in  $G_2$ , it is transcendental over  $G_2$ . Hence  $g$  extends to an isomorphism  $h : G_1(b_1) \rightarrow G_2(b_2)$  which maps  $b_1$  to  $b_2$

In order to show that  $h$  is order preserving it suffices to show that  $h$  is order preserving on  $G_1[b_1]$ . Let  $p(b_1)$  be an element of  $G_1[b_1]$ . Corollary ?? gives us a decomposition

$$p(X) = \epsilon \prod_{i < m} (X - a_i) \prod_{j < n} ((X - c_j)^2 + d_j)$$

with positive  $d_j$ . The sign of  $p(b_1)$  depends only on the signs of the factors  $\epsilon, b_1 - a_0, \dots, b_1 - a_{m-1}$ . The sign of  $h(p(b_1))$  depends in the same way on the signs of  $g(\epsilon), b_2 - g(a_0), \dots, b_2 - g(a_{m-1})$ . But  $b_2$  was chosen in such a way that

$$b_1 < a_i \iff b_2 < g(a_i)$$

Hence  $p(b_1)$  is positive iff  $h(p(b_1))$  is positive

Finally we have

$$\begin{aligned} (K_1, <) \models \rho(b_1) &\Rightarrow (G_1(b_1), <) \models \rho(b_1) \Rightarrow (G_2(b_2), <) \models \rho(b_2) \Rightarrow \\ &\Rightarrow (K_2', <) \models \exists y \rho(y) \Rightarrow (K_2, <) \models \exists y \rho(y) \end{aligned}$$

RCF is complete since the ordered field of the rationals is a prime structure  $\square$

**Corollary 3.38** (Hilbert's 17th Problem). *Let  $(K, <)$  be a real closed field. A polynomial  $f \in K[X_1, \dots, X_n]$  is a sum of squares*

$$f = g_1^2 + \dots + g_k^2$$



of rational functions  $g_i \in K(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  iff

$$f(a_1, \dots, a_n) \geq 0$$

for all  $a_1, \dots, a_n \in K$

*Proof.* Clearly a sum of squares cannot have negative values. For the converse, assume that  $f$  is not a sum of squares. Then by Corollary ??,  $K(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  has an ordering in which  $f$  is negative. Since in  $K$  the positive elements are squares, this ordering, which we denote by  $<$ , extends the ordering of  $K$ . Let  $(L, <)$  be the real closure of  $(K(X_1, \dots, X_n), <)$ . In  $(L, <)$ , the sentence

$$\exists x_1, \dots, x_n f(x_1, \dots, x_n) < 0$$

is true. Hence it is also true in  $(K, <)$  □

**Exercise 3.3.1.** Let Graph be the theory of graphs. The theory RG of the **random graph** is the extension of Graph by the following axiom scheme

$$\forall x_0 \dots x_{m-1} y_1 \dots y_{n-1} \left( \bigwedge_{i \neq j} \neg x_i \dot{=} y_j \rightarrow \right. \\ \left. \exists z \left( \bigwedge_{i < m} z R x_i \right) \wedge \left( \bigwedge_{j < n} \neg z R y_j \wedge \neg z \dot{=} y_j \right) \right)$$

From here, some definitions of random graphs

Let  $p \in [0, 1]$  denote the probability with which a given pair is included. We assume all the edges have the same probability of occurrence. We denote the set of graphs constructed in this manner by  $\mathcal{G}(n, p)$ , where  $n$  is the number of elements in the vertex set.

**Definition 3.39.** A graph  $G$  has property  $\mathcal{P}_{i,j}$  with  $i, j = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$  if, for any disjoint vertex sets  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  with  $|V_1| \leq i$  and  $|V_2| \leq j$ , there exists a vertex  $v \in G$  that satisfies three conditions

1.  $v \notin V_1 \cup V_2$
2.  $v \leftrightarrow x$  for every  $x \in V_1$  and
3.  $v \nleftrightarrow y$  for every  $y \in V_2$

**Lemma 3.40.** An infinite graph  $G \in \mathcal{G}(\aleph_0, p)$  has all the properties  $\mathcal{P}_{i,j}$  with probability 1

## 4 Countable Models

### 4.1 The omitting types theorem

**Definition 4.1.** Let  $T$  be an  $L$ -theory and  $\Sigma(x)$  a set of  $L$ -formulas. A model  $\mathfrak{A}$  of  $T$  not realizing  $\Sigma(x)$  is said to **omit**  $\Sigma(x)$ . A formula  $\varphi(x)$  **isolates**  $\Sigma(x)$  if

1.  $\varphi(x)$  is consistent with  $T$
2.  $T \models \forall x(\varphi(x) \rightarrow \sigma(x))$  for all  $\sigma(x) \in \Sigma(x)$

A set of formulas is often called a **partial type**.

**Theorem 4.2 (Omitting Types).** *If  $T$  is countable and consistent and if  $\Sigma(x)$  is not isolated in  $T$ , then  $T$  has a model which omits  $\Sigma(x)$*

If  $\Sigma(x)$  is isolated by  $\varphi(x)$  and  $\mathfrak{A}$  is a model of  $T$ , then  $\Sigma(x)$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{A}$  by all realisations  $\varphi(x)$ . Therefore the converse of the theorem is true for **complete** theories  $T$ : if  $\Sigma(x)$  is isolated in  $T$ , then it is realised in every model of  $T$

*Proof.* We choose a countable set  $C$  of new constants and extend  $T$  to a theory  $T^*$  with the following properties

1.  $T^*$  is a Henkin theory: for all  $L(C)$ -formulas  $\psi(x)$  there exists a constant  $c \in C$  with  $\exists x\psi(x) \rightarrow \psi(c) \in T^*$
2. for all  $c \in C$  there is a  $\sigma(x) \in \Sigma(x)$  with  $\neg\sigma(c) \in T^*$

We construct  $T^*$  inductively as the union of an ascending chain

$$T = T_0 \subseteq T_1 \subseteq T_2 \subseteq \dots$$

of consistent extensions of  $T$  by finitely many axioms from  $L(C)$ , in each step making an instance of (1) or (2) true.

Enumerate  $C = \{c_i \mid i < \omega\}$  and let  $\{\psi_i(x) \mid i < \omega\}$  be an enumeration of the  $L(C)$ -formulas

Assume that  $T_{2i}$  is the already constructed. Choose some  $c \in C$  which doesn't occur in  $T_{2i} \cup \{\psi_i(x)\}$  and set  $T_{2i+1} = T_{2i} \cup \{\exists x\psi_i(x) \rightarrow \psi_i(c)\}$ .

Up to equivalence  $T_{2i+1}$  has the form  $T \cup \{\delta(c_i, \bar{c})\}$  for an  $L$ -formula  $\delta(x, \bar{y})$  and a tuple  $\bar{c} \in C$  which doesn't contain  $c_i$ . Since  $\exists \bar{y}\delta(x, \bar{y})$  doesn't isolate  $\Sigma(x)$ , for some  $\sigma \in \Sigma$  the formula  $\exists \bar{y}\delta(x, \bar{y}) \wedge \neg\sigma(x)$  is consistent with  $T$ . Thus  $T_{2i+2} = T_{2i+1} \cup \{\neg\sigma(c_i)\}$  is consistent

Take a model  $(\mathfrak{A}', a_c)_{c \in C}$  of  $T^*$ . Since  $T^*$  is a Henkin theory, Tarski's Test 2.2 shows that  $A = \{a_c \mid c \in C\}$  is the universe of an elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{A}$  (Lemma 2.7). By property (2),  $\Sigma(x)$  is omitted in  $\mathfrak{A}$   $\square$

**Corollary 4.3.** *Let  $T$  be countable and consistent and let*

$$\Sigma_0(x_0, \dots, x_{n_0}), \Sigma_1(x_1, \dots, x_{n_1}), \dots$$

*be a sequence of partial types. If all  $\Sigma_i$  are not isolated, then  $T$  has a model which omits all  $\Sigma_i$*

*Proof.* If  $\Sigma_0(x), \Sigma_1(x), \dots$ . Then  $T_{2i+2} = T_{2i+1} \cup \{\neg\sigma_m(c_{mn})\}$

If  $\Sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , then  $T_{2i+1} = T_{2i} \cup \{\exists \bar{x} \psi_i(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \psi_i(\bar{c})\}$ .

Combine the two case  $\square$

## 4.2 The space of types

Fix a theory  $T$ . An  $n$ -**type** is a maximal set of formulas  $p(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  consistent with  $T$ . We denote by  $S_n(T)$  the set of all  $n$ -types of  $T$ . We also write  $S(T)$  for  $S_1(T)$ .  $S_0(T)$  is all complete extensions of  $T$

If  $B$  is a subset of an  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{A}$ , we recover  $S_n^{\mathfrak{A}}(B)$  as  $S_n(\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}_B))$ . In particular, if  $T$  is complete and  $\mathfrak{A}$  is any model of  $T$ , we have  $S^{\mathfrak{A}}(\emptyset) = S(T)$

For any  $L$ -formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , let  $[\varphi]$  denote the set of all types containing  $\varphi$ .

**Lemma 4.4.** 1.  $[\varphi] = [\psi]$  iff  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  are equivalent modulo  $T$

2. The sets  $[\varphi]$  are closed under Boolean operations. In fact  $[\varphi] \cap [\psi] = [\varphi \wedge \psi]$ ,  $[\varphi] \cup [\psi] = [\varphi \vee \psi]$ ,  $S_n(T) \setminus [\varphi] = [\neg\varphi]$ ,  $S_n(T) = [\top]$  and  $\emptyset = [\perp]$

It follows that the collection of sets of the form  $[\varphi]$  is closed under finite intersection and includes  $S_n(T)$ . So these sets form a basis of a topology on  $S_n(T)$

In this book, compact means finite cover and Hausdorff

**Lemma 4.5.** *The space  $S_n(T)$  is 0-dimensional and compact*

*Proof.* Being 0-dimensional means having a basis of clopen sets. Our basic open sets are clopen since their complements are also basic open

If  $p$  and  $q$  are two different types, there is a formula  $\varphi$  contained in  $p$  but not in  $q$ . It follows that  $[\varphi]$  and  $[\neg\varphi]$  are open sets which separate  $p$  and  $q$ . This shows that  $S_n(T)$  is Hausdorff

To prove compactness, we need to show that any collection of closed subsets of  $X$  with the finite intersection property has nonempty intersection. Could check this

Consider a family  $[\varphi_i]$  ( $i \in I$ ), with the finite intersection property. This means that  $\varphi_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \varphi_{i_k}$  are consistent with  $T$ . So Corollary 2.10  $\{\varphi_i \mid i \in I\}$  is consistent with  $T$  and can be extended to a type  $p$ , which then belongs to all  $[\varphi_i]$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 4.6.** *All clopen subsets of  $S_n(T)$  has the form  $[\varphi]$*

*Proof.* For any open sets  $O$ ,  $O = \bigcup [\varphi_i]$ . As  $S_n(T)$  is compact,  $O = \bigcup_{i=1}^k [\varphi_i] = [\bigvee_{i=1}^k \varphi_i]$

Closed subset of a compact space is compact. It follows from Exercise 3.1.1 that we can separate any two disjoint closed subsets of  $S_n(T)$  by a basic open set.  $\square$

The Stone duality theorem asserts that the map

$$X \mapsto \{C \mid C \text{ clopen subset of } X\}$$

yields an equivalence between the category of 0-dimensional compact spaces and the category of Boolean algebras. The inverse map assigns to every Boolean algebra to its **Stone space**

**Definition 4.7.** A map  $f$  from a subset of a structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  to a structure  $\mathfrak{B}$  is **elementary** if it preserves the truth of formulas; i.e.,  $f : A_0 \rightarrow B$  is elementary if for every formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\bar{a} \in A_0$  we have

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(\bar{a}) \Rightarrow \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(f(\bar{a}))$$

**Lemma 4.8.** *Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  be  $L$ -structures,  $A_0$  and  $B_0$  subsets of  $A$  and  $B$ , respectively. Any elementary map  $A_0 \rightarrow B_0$  induces a continuous surjective map  $S_n(B_0) \rightarrow S_n(A_0)$*

*Proof.* If  $q(\bar{x}) \in S_n(B_0)$ , we define

$$S(f)(q) = \{\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, \bar{a}) \mid \bar{a} \in A_0, \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, f(\bar{a})) \in q(\bar{x})\}$$

If  $\varphi(\bar{x}, f(\bar{a})) \notin q(\bar{x})$ , then  $\mathfrak{B} \not\models \varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$ . Therefore  $\mathfrak{A} \not\models \varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$ .  $S(f)$  defines a map from  $S_n(B_0)$  to  $S_n(A_0)$ . Moreover, it is surjective since  $\{\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, f(\bar{a})) \mid \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, a) \in p\}$  is finitely satisfiable for all  $p \in S_n(A_0)$ . And  $S(f)$  is continuous since  $[\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, f(\bar{a}))]$  is the preimage of  $[\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, \bar{a})]$  under  $S(f)$   $\square$

There are two main cases

1. An elementary bijection  $f : A_0 \rightarrow B_0$  defines a homeomorphism  $S_n(A_0) \rightarrow S_n(B_0)$ . We write  $f(p)$  for the image of  $p$
2. If  $\mathfrak{A} = \mathfrak{B}$  and  $A_0 \subseteq B_0$ , the inclusion map induces the **restriction**  $S_n(B_0) \rightarrow S_n(A_0)$ . We write  $q \upharpoonright A_0$  for the restriction of  $q$  to  $A_0$ . We call  $q$  an extension of  $q \upharpoonright A_0$

**Lemma 4.9.** *A type  $p$  is isolated in  $T$  iff  $p$  is an isolated point in  $S_n(T)$ . In fact,  $\varphi$  isolates  $p$  iff  $[\varphi] = \{p\}$ . That is,  $[\varphi]$  is an **atom** in the Boolean algebra of clopen subsets of  $S_n(T)$*

*Proof.*  $p$  being an isolated point means that  $\{p\}$  is open, that is,  $\{p\} = [\varphi]$ .

The set  $[\varphi]$  is a singleton iff  $[\varphi]$  is non-empty and cannot be divided into two non-empty clopen subsets  $[\varphi \wedge \psi]$  and  $[\varphi \wedge \neg\psi]$ . This means that for all  $\psi$  either  $\psi$  or  $\neg\psi$  follows from  $\varphi$  modulo  $T$ . So  $[\varphi]$  is a singleton iff  $\varphi$  generates the type

$$\langle \varphi \rangle = \{\psi(\bar{x}) \mid T \models \forall \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \psi(\bar{x}))\}$$

which is the only element of  $[\varphi]$

This shows that  $[\varphi] = \{p\}$  implies that  $\varphi$  isolates  $p$ .

Conversely,  $\varphi$  isolates  $p$ , this means that  $\langle \varphi \rangle$  is consistent with  $T$  and contains  $p$ . Since  $p$  is a type, we have  $p = \langle \varphi \rangle$   $\square$

We call a formula  $\varphi(x)$  **complete** if

$$\{\psi(\bar{x}) \mid T \models \forall \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \psi(\bar{x}))\}$$

is a type.

**Corollary 4.10.** *A formula isolates a type iff it is complete*

- Exercise 4.2.1.*
1. Closed subsets of  $S_n(T)$  have the form  $\{p \in S_n(T) \mid \Sigma \subseteq p\}$ , where  $\Sigma$  is any set of formulas
  2. Let  $T$  be countable and consistent. Then any meagre<sup>1</sup> subset  $X$  of  $S_n(T)$  can be omitted, i.e., there is a model which omits all  $p \in X$

*Proof.* 1. The sets  $[\varphi]$  are a basis for the closed subsets of  $S_n(T)$ . So the closed sets of  $S_n(T)$  are exactly the intersections  $\bigcap_{\varphi \in \Sigma} [\varphi] = \{p \in S_n(T) \mid \Sigma \subseteq p\}$

---

<sup>1</sup>A subset of a topological space is **nowhere dense** if its closure has no interior. A countable union of nowhere dense sets is meagre

2. The set  $X$  is the union of a sequence of countable nowhere dense sets  $X_i$ . We may assume that  $X_i$  are closed, i.e., of the form  $\{p \in S_n(T) \mid \Sigma_i \subseteq p\}$ . That  $X_i$  has no interior means that  $\Sigma_i$  is not isolated. The claim follows now from Corollary 4.3

□

*Exercise 4.2.2.* Consider the space  $S_\omega(T)$  of all complete types in variables  $v_0, v_1, \dots$ . Note that  $S_\omega(T)$  is again a compact space and therefore not meagre by Baire's theorem

1. Show that  $\{\text{tp}(a_0, a_1, \dots) \mid \text{the } a_i \text{ enumerate a model of } T\}$  is comeagre in  $S_\omega(T)$

*Exercise 4.2.3.* Let  $B$  be a subset of  $\mathfrak{A}$ . Show that the **restriction** (restriction of variables) map  $S_{m+n}(B) \rightarrow S_n(B)$  is open, continuous and surjective. Let  $a$  be an  $n$ -tuple in  $A$ . Show that the fibre over  $\text{tp}(a/B)$  is canonically homeomorphic to  $S_m(aB)$ .

Consider the restriction map  $\pi : S_{m+1}(B) \rightarrow S_1(B)$ . Then  $\pi^{-1}(\text{tp}(a/B)) \cong S_m(aB)$

*Proof.* We define the restriction map  $f : S_{m+n}(B) \rightarrow S_n(B)$  as: for  $q(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \in S_{m+n}(B)$ , we let  $f(q(\bar{x}, \bar{y})) = \{\varphi(\bar{y}) : \varphi(\bar{y}) \in q(\bar{x}, \bar{y})\}$ , where  $\bar{x}$  and  $\bar{y}$  are of size  $m$  and  $n$  respectively.

continuous is easy

Now given an open set  $[\phi(\bar{v}, \bar{w})] \subseteq S_{m+n}(B)$ . We need to prove  $f([\phi(\bar{v}, \bar{w})]) = [\exists \bar{v} \phi(\bar{v}, \bar{w})]$  which is clear

$[\phi(\bar{x}, y)] \in \pi^{-1}(\text{tp}(a/B))$  iff  $\mathfrak{M} \models \exists \bar{x} \phi(\bar{x}, a)$ . Thus define  $g : [\phi(\bar{x}, y)] \mapsto [\phi(\bar{x}, a)]$ . If  $[\phi(\bar{x}, a)] = [\psi(\bar{x}, a)]$ , then  $\models \phi(\bar{x}, a) \leftrightarrow \psi(\bar{x}, a)$ . □

*Exercise 4.2.4.* A theory  $T$  has quantifier elimination iff every type is implied by its quantifier-free part

*Exercise 4.2.5.* Consider the structure  $\mathfrak{M} = (\mathbb{Q}, <)$ . Determine all types in  $S_1(\mathbb{Q})$ . Which of these types are realised in  $\mathbb{R}$ ? Which extensions does a type over  $\mathbb{Q}$  have to a type over  $\mathbb{R}$ ?

*Proof.*

□

### 4.3 $\aleph_0$ -categorical theories

**Theorem 4.11** (Ryll-Nardzewski). *Let  $T$  be a countable complete theory. Then  $T$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical iff for every  $n$  there are only finitely many formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  up to equivalence relative to  $T$*

**Definition 4.12.** An  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated if all types over finite subsets of  $A$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{A}$

The types in the definition are meant to be 1-types. On the other hand, it is not hard to see that an  $\omega$ -saturated structure realises all  $n$ -types over finite sets (Exercise 4.3.3) for all  $n \geq 1$ . The following lemma is a generalisation of the  $\aleph_0$ -categoricity of DLO.

**Lemma 4.13.** *Two elementarily equivalent, countable and  $\omega$ -saturated structures are isomorphic*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  are as in the lemma. We choose enumerations  $A = \{a_0, a_1, \dots\}$  and  $B = \{b_0, b_1, \dots\}$ . Then we construct an ascending sequence  $f_0 \subseteq f_1 \subseteq \dots$  of finite elementary maps

$$f_i : A_i \rightarrow B_i$$

between finite subsets of  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$ . We will choose the  $f_i$  in such a way that  $A$  is the union of the  $A_i$  and  $B$  the union of the  $B_i$ . The union of the  $f_i$  is then the desired isomorphism between  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$

The empty map  $f_0 = \emptyset$  is elementary since  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  are elementarily equivalent. Assume that  $f_i$  is already constructed. There are two cases:

$i = 2n$ ; We will extend  $f_i$  to  $A_{i+1} = A_i \cup \{a_n\}$ . Consider the type

$$p(x) = \text{tp}(a_n/A_i) = \{\varphi(x) \mid \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a_n), \varphi(x) \text{ a } L(A_i)\text{-formula}\}$$

Since  $f_i$  is elementary,  $f_i(p)(x)$  is in  $\mathfrak{B}$  a type over  $B_i$ . (note that  $f_i$  is elementary iff  $\mathfrak{A}_{A_i} \equiv \mathfrak{B}_{B_i}$ ) Since  $\mathfrak{B}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated, there is a realisation  $b'$  of this type. So for  $\bar{a} \in A_i$

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a_n, \bar{a}) \Rightarrow \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(b', f_i(\bar{a}))$$

Given  $b'$ , then the type that it realises is fixed. Hence

$$\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi(b', f_i(\bar{a})) \Rightarrow \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a_n, \bar{a})$$

This shows that  $f_{i+1}(a_n) = b'$  defines an elementary extension of  $f_i$

$i = 2n + 1$ ; we exchange  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  □

*Proof of Theorem 4.11.* Assume that there are only finitely many  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  relative to  $T$  for every  $n$ . By Lemma 4.13 it suffices to show that all models of  $T$  are  $\omega$ -saturated. Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$  and  $A$  an  $n$ -element subset. If there are only  $N$  many formulas, up to equivalence, in the variable  $x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}$ ,

there are, up to equivalence in  $\mathfrak{M}$ , at most  $N$  many  $L(A)$ -formulas  $\varphi(x)$ . Thus, each type  $\varphi(x) \in S(A)$  is isolated (w.r.t.  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{M}_A)$ ) by a smallest formula  $\varphi_p(x)$  ( $\bigwedge p(x)$ ). Each element of  $M$  which realises  $\varphi_p(x)$  also realises  $p(x)$ , so  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated.

Conversely, if there are infinitely many  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  modulo  $T$  for some  $n$ , then - as the type space  $S_n(T)$  is compact - there must be some non-isolated type  $p$  (if  $p$  is isolated, then  $\{p\}$  is open). Then by Lemma 4.9  $p$  is not isolated in  $T$ . By the Omitting Types Theorem there is a countable model of  $T$  in which this type is not realised. On the other hand, there also exists a countable model of  $T$  realizing this type. So  $T$  is not  $\aleph_0$ -categorical  $\square$

The proof shows that a countable complete theory with infinite models is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical iff all countable models are  $\omega$ -saturated

given a variables  $\varphi_i(a_i)$  where  $a_i \in A$ , we can consider  $\bigwedge \exists x_i \varphi_i(x_i)$ .

**Definition 4.14.** An  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\omega$ -**homogeneous** if for every elementary map  $f_0$  defined on a finite subset  $A$  of  $M$  and for any  $a \in M$  there is some element  $b \in M$  s.t.

$$f = f_0 \cup \{\langle a, b \rangle\}$$

is elementary

$$f = f_0 \cup \{\langle a, b \rangle\} \text{ is elementary iff } b \text{ realises } f_0(\text{tp}(a/A))$$

**Corollary 4.15.** Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be a structure and  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  elements of  $\mathfrak{A}$ . Then  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical iff  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}, a_1, \dots, a_n)$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical

*Proof.* If  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical, then for any  $m + n$  there is only finitely many formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_{m+n})$  up to equivalence relative to  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$ , hence there is only finitely many  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_m, a_1, \dots, a_n)$  up to equivalence relative to  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}, a_1, \dots, a_n)$

For the converse,  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \subset \text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}, a_1, \dots, a_n)$   $\square$

**Example 4.1.** The following theories are  $\aleph_0$ -categorical

1. Infset (saturated)
2. For every finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$ , the theory of infinite  $\mathbb{F}_q$ -vector spaces. (Vector spaces over the same field and of the same dimension are isomorphic)
3. The theory DLO of dense linear orders without endpoints. This follows from Theorem 4.11 since DLO has quantifier elimination: for every  $n$  there are only finitely many (say  $N_n$ ) ways to order  $n$  elements. Each of these possibility corresponds to a complete formula



$\psi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ . Hence there are up to equivalence, exactly  $2^{N_n}$  many formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$

**Definition 4.16.** A theory  $T$  is **small** if  $S_n(T)$  are at most countable for all  $n < \omega$

**Lemma 4.17.** A countable complete theory is small iff it has a countable  $\omega$ -saturated model

*Proof.* If  $T$  has a finite model  $\mathfrak{A}$ ,  $T$  is small and  $\mathfrak{A}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated: since  $T$  is complete, for any type  $p(x) \in S_n(T)$ ,  $T \models p(x)$ . For finite model  $\mathfrak{A}$ , there are only finitely many assignments. If we have two distinct types  $p(x), q(x) \in S_n(T)$ , then there is  $\phi(x) \in p(x)$  and  $\phi(x) \notin q(x)$ . Since they are maximally consistent,  $q(x) \models \neg\phi(x)$  hence  $p(x)$  and  $q(x)$  cannot be realised by the same element. So we may assume that  $T$  has infinite models

If all types can be realised in a single countable model, there can be at most countably many types.

if conversely all  $S_{n+1}(T)$  are at most countable, then over any  $n$ -element subset of a model of  $T$  there are at most countably many types. We construct an elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{A}_0 < \mathfrak{A}_1 < \dots$$

of models of  $T$ . For  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  we take any countable model. if  $\mathfrak{A}_i$  is already constructed, we use Corollary 2.14 and Theorem 2.15 to construct a countable model  $\mathfrak{A}_{i+1}$  in such a way that all types over finite subsets of  $A_i$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{A}_{i+1}$ . This can be done since there are only countable many such types. The union  $\mathfrak{A} = \bigcup_{i \in \omega} \mathfrak{A}_i$  is countable and  $\omega$ -saturated since every type over a finite subset  $B$  of  $\mathfrak{A}$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{A}_{i+1}$  if  $B \subseteq A_i$   $\square$

**Theorem 4.18 (Vaught).** A countable complete theory cannot have exactly two countably models

*Proof.* We can assume that  $T$  is small and not  $\aleph_0$ -categorical (if  $T$  is not small, then it has no countable model). We will show that  $T$  has at least three non-isomorphic countable models. First,  $T$  has an  $\omega$ -saturated countable model  $\mathfrak{A}$  and there is a non-isolated type  $p(\bar{x})$  which can be omitted in a countable model  $\mathfrak{B}$ . Let  $p(\bar{x})$  be realised in  $\mathfrak{A}$  by  $\bar{a}$ . Since  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}, \bar{a})$  is not  $\aleph_0$ -categorical as  $T \subset \text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}, \bar{a})$ ,  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}, \bar{a})$  has a countable model  $(\mathfrak{C}, \bar{c})$  which is not  $\omega$ -saturated. Then  $\mathfrak{C}$  is not  $\omega$ -saturated and therefore not isomorphic to  $\mathfrak{A}$ . But  $\mathfrak{C}$  realises  $p(\bar{x})$  and is therefore not isomorphic to  $\mathfrak{B}$   $\square$

*Exercise 4.3.1.* Show that  $T$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical iff  $S_n(T)$  is finite for all  $n$

*Exercise 4.3.2.* Show that for every  $n > 2$  there is a countable complete theory with exactly  $n$  countable models

*Proof.* StackExchange □

*Exercise 4.3.3.* If  $\mathfrak{A}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated, all  $n$ -types over finite sets are realised.

*Proof.* Assume that  $\mathfrak{A}$  is  $\kappa$ -saturated,  $B$  a subset of  $A$  of smaller cardinality than  $\kappa$  and  $p(x, \bar{y})$  a  $(n+1)$ -type over  $B$ . Let  $\bar{b} \in A$  be a realisation of  $q(\bar{y}) = p \upharpoonright \bar{y}$  and  $a \in A$  a realisation of  $p(x, \bar{b})$ . Then  $(a, \bar{b})$  realises  $p$ . □

#### 4.4 The amalgamation method

**Definition 4.19.** For any language  $L$ , the **skeleton**  $\mathcal{K}$  of an  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is the class of all finitely-generated  $L$ -structures which are isomorphic to a substructure of  $\mathfrak{M}$ . We say that an  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  **$\mathcal{K}$ -saturated** if its skeleton is  $\mathcal{K}$  and if for all  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and all embeddings  $f_0 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}$  and  $f_1 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$  there is an embedding  $g_1 : \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}$  with  $f_0 = g_1 \circ f_1$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{A} & \xrightarrow{f_0} & \mathfrak{M} \\ & \searrow f_1 & \nearrow g \\ & \mathfrak{B} & \end{array}$$

**Theorem 4.20.** Let  $L$  be a countable language. Any two countable  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturated structures are isomorphic

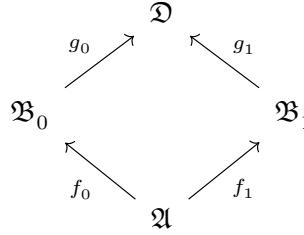
*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  be countable  $L$ -structures with the same skeleton  $\mathcal{K}$ , and assume that  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  are  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturated. As in the proof of Lemma 4.13 we construct an isomorphism between  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  as the union of an ascending sequence of isomorphisms between finitely-generated substructures of  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$ .

If  $f_1 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$  is an embedding of a finitely-generated substructure of  $\mathfrak{A}$  of  $\mathfrak{M}$  into  $\mathfrak{N}$ , and  $a$  is an element of  $\mathfrak{M}$ , then by  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturation  $f_1$  can be extended to an embedding  $g_1 : \mathfrak{A}' \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$  where  $\mathfrak{A}' = \langle Aa \rangle^{\mathfrak{M}}$ . Now interchange the roles of  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$ . □

The proof shows that any countable  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturated structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is **ultrahomogeneous** i.e., any isomorphism between finitely generated substructure extends to an automorphism of  $\mathfrak{M}$ .

**Theorem 4.21.** Let  $L$  be a countable language and  $\mathcal{K}$  a countable class of finitely-generated  $L$ -structures. There is a countable  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturated  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  iff

1. (Heredity) if  $\mathfrak{A}_0 \in \mathcal{K}$ , then all elements of the skeleton of  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  also belongs to  $\mathcal{K}$
2. (Joint Embedding) for  $\mathfrak{B}_0, \mathfrak{B}_1 \in \mathcal{K}$  there are some  $\mathfrak{D} \in \mathcal{K}$  and embeddings  $g_i : \mathfrak{B}_i \rightarrow \mathfrak{D}$
3. (Amalgamation) if  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}_0, \mathfrak{B}_1 \in \mathcal{K}$  and  $f_i : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}_i$ , ( $i = 0, 1$ ) are embeddings, there is some  $\mathfrak{D} \in \mathcal{K}$  and two embeddings  $g_i : \mathfrak{B}_i \rightarrow \mathfrak{D}$  s.t.  $g_0 \circ f_0 = g_1 \circ f_1$



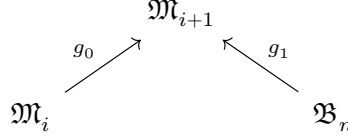
in this case,  $\mathfrak{M}$  is unique up to isomorphism and is called the Fraïssé limit of  $\mathcal{K}$

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{K}$  be the skeleton of a countably  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturated structure  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Clearly,  $\mathcal{K}$  has the hereditary property (substructure of a substructure is still a substructure). To see that  $\mathcal{K}$  has the Amalgamation Property, let  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}_0, \mathfrak{B}_1, f_0$  and  $f_1$  be as in 3. We may assume that  $\mathfrak{B}_0 \subseteq \mathfrak{M}$  and  $f_0$  is the inclusion map. Furthermore we can assume  $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}_1$  and that  $f_1$  is the inclusion map. Now the embedding  $g_1 : \mathfrak{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}$  is the extension of the isomorphism  $f_0 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow f_0(\mathfrak{A})$  to  $\mathfrak{B}_1$  and satisfies  $f_0 = g_1 \circ f_1$ . For  $\mathfrak{D}$  we choose a finitely-generated substructure of  $\mathfrak{M}$  which contains  $\mathfrak{B}_0$  and the image of  $g_1$ . For  $g_0 : \mathfrak{B}_0 \rightarrow \mathfrak{D}$  take the inclusion map. For Joint Embedding Property take  $\langle B_0 B_1 \rangle^{\mathfrak{M}}$

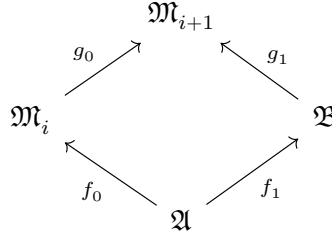
For the converse assume that  $\mathcal{K}$  has properties 1, 2 and 3. Choose an enumeration  $(\mathfrak{B}_i)_{i \in \omega}$  of all isomorphism types in  $\mathcal{K}$  (they are not isomorphic). We construct  $\mathfrak{M}$  as the union of an ascending chain

$$\mathfrak{M}_0 \subseteq \mathfrak{M}_1 \subseteq \dots \subseteq \mathfrak{M}$$

of elements of  $\mathcal{K}$ . Suppose that  $\mathfrak{M}_i$  is already constructed. If  $i = 2n$ , we choose  $\mathfrak{M}_{i+1}$  as the top of a diagram



where we can assume that  $g_0$  is the inclusion map. if  $i = 2n + 1$ , let  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  from  $\mathcal{K}$  and two embeddings  $f_0 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_i$  and  $f_1 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$  be given.



To ensure that  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturated we have in the odd steps to make the right choice of  $\mathfrak{A}$ ,  $\mathfrak{B}$ ,  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ . Assume that we have  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{K}$  and embeddings  $f_0 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}$  and  $f_1 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ . For large  $j$  the image of  $f_0$  will be contained in  $\mathfrak{M}_j$ . During the construction of the  $\mathfrak{M}_i$ , in order to guarantee the  $\mathcal{K}$ -saturation of  $\mathfrak{M}$ , we have to ensure that eventually, for some odd  $i \geq j$ , the embeddings  $f_0 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_i$  and  $f_1 : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$  were used in the construction of  $\mathfrak{M}_{i+1}$ . This can be done since for each  $j$  there are - up to isomorphism - at most countably many possibilities. Thus there exists an embedding  $g_1 : \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}_{i+1}$  with  $f_0 = g_1 \circ f_1$ .

$\mathcal{K}$  is the skeleton of  $\mathfrak{M}$ : the finitely-generated substructure are the substructures of the  $\mathfrak{M}_1$ . Since  $\mathfrak{M}_i \in \mathcal{K}$ , their finitely-generated substructure also belong to  $\mathcal{K}$ . On the other hand each  $\mathfrak{B}_n$  is isomorphic to a substructure of  $\mathfrak{M}_{2n+1}$

Uniqueness follows from Theorem 4.20 □

For finite relational languages  $L$ , any non-empty finite subset is itself a (finitely-generated) substructure. For such languages, the construction yields  $\aleph_0$ -categorical structures. We now take a look at  $\aleph_0$ -categorical theories with quantifier elimination in a **finite relational language**

*Remark.* A complete theory  $T$  in a finite relational language with quantifier elimination is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical. So all its models are  $\omega$ -homogeneous

*Proof.* For every  $n$  there is only a finite number of non-equivalent quantifier free formulas  $\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ . If  $T$  has quantifier elimination, this number is also the number of all formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  modulo  $T$  and so  $T$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical by Theorem 4.11 □

**Lemma 4.22.** *Let  $T$  be a complete theory in a finite relational language and  $\mathfrak{M}$  an infinite model of  $T$ . TFAE*

1.  $T$  has quantifier elimination
2. Any isomorphism between finite substructures is elementary
3. the domain of any isomorphism between finite substructures can be extended to any further element

*Proof.*  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . if any isomorphism between finite substructure of  $\mathfrak{M}$  is elementary, all  $n$ -tuples  $\bar{a}$  which satisfy in  $\mathfrak{M}$  the same quantifier-free type

$$\text{tp}_{\text{qf}}(\bar{a}) = \{\rho(\bar{x}) \mid \mathfrak{M} \models \rho(\bar{a}), \rho(\bar{x}) \text{ quantifier-free}\}$$

satisfy the same simple existential formulas. We will show from this that every simple existential formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \exists y \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n, y)$  is, modulo  $T$ , equivalent to a quantifier-free formula. Let  $r_1(\bar{x}), \dots, r_{k-1}(\bar{x})$  be the quantifier-free types of all  $n$ -tuples in  $\mathfrak{M}$  which satisfy  $\varphi(\bar{x})$ . Let  $\rho_i(\bar{x})$  be equivalent to the conjunction of all formulas from  $r_i(\bar{x})$ . Then

$$T \models \forall \bar{x} (\varphi(\bar{x}) \leftrightarrow \bigvee_{i < k} \rho_i(\bar{x}))$$

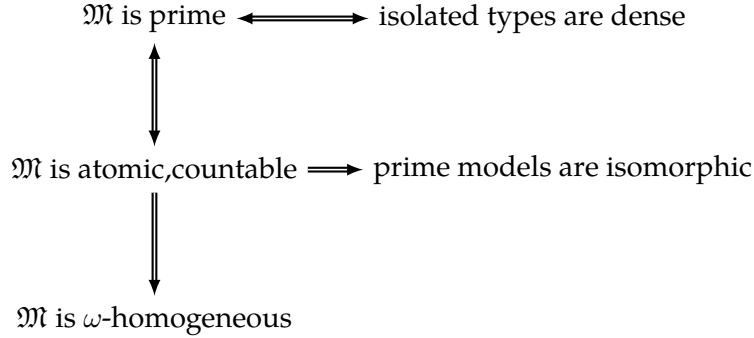
$1 \rightarrow 3$  the theory  $T$  is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical and hence all models are  $\omega$ -homogeneous. Since any isomorphism between finite substructures is elementary, 3 follows.

$3 \rightarrow 2$ . If the domain of any finite isomorphism can be extended to any further element, it is easy to see that every finite isomorphism is elementary. Here we can only consider  $\exists x \varphi(x)$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 4.23.** *Let  $L$  be a finite relational language and  $\mathcal{K}$  a class of finite  $L$ -structures. If the Fraïssé limit of  $\mathcal{K}$  exists, its theory is  $\aleph_0$ -categorical and has quantifier elimination*

## 4.5 Prime Models

Suppose  $T$  is countable and has infinite models,  $\mathfrak{M} \models T$



Let  $T$  be a countable complete theory with infinite models

**Definition 4.24.** Let  $T$  be a countable theory with infinite models, not necessarily complete

1. We call  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  a **prime model** of  $T$  if  $\mathfrak{A}_0$  can be elementarily embedded into all models of  $T$
2. A structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  is called **atomic** if all  $n$ -tuples  $\bar{a}$  of elements of  $\mathfrak{A}$  are atomic. This means that the types  $\text{tp}(\bar{a})$  are isolated in  $S_n^{\mathfrak{A}}(\emptyset) = S_n(T)$

Prime models need not exist. By Corollary 4.10, a tuple  $\bar{a}$  is atomic iff it satisfies a complete formula.

Since  $T$  has countable models, prime models must be countable and since non-isolated types can be omitted in suitable models by Theorem 4.2, only isolated types can be realised in prime models.

**Theorem 4.25.** *A model of  $T$  is prime iff it is countable and atomic*

*Proof.* As just noted, a prime model has to be countable and atomic.

Let  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  be a countable and atomic model of  $T$  and  $\mathfrak{M}$  any model of  $T$ . We construct an elementary embedding of  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  to  $\mathfrak{M}$  as a union of an ascending sequence of elementary maps

$$f : A \rightarrow B$$

between finite subsets  $A$  of  $M_0$  and  $B$  of  $M$ . The empty map is elementary since  $T$  is complete and  $\mathfrak{M}_0 \equiv \mathfrak{M}$

We show that  $f$  can be extended to any given  $A \cup \{a\}$ . Let  $p(x) = \text{tp}(a/A)$  and  $f(p) = f(p(x))$ . We show that  $f(p)$  has a realisation  $b \in M$

Let  $\bar{a}$  be a tuple which enumerates the elements of  $A$  and  $\varphi(x, \bar{x})$  an  $L$ -formula which isolates the  $\text{tp}(a\bar{a})$  since  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  is atomic. Then  $p(x)$  is isolated by  $\varphi(x, \bar{a})$ : clearly  $\varphi(x, \bar{a}) \in \text{tp}(a/\bar{a})$  and if  $\rho(x, \bar{a}) \in \text{tp}(a/\bar{a})$  we have

$\rho(x, y) \in \text{tp}(a, \bar{a})$ . This implies that  $\mathfrak{M}_0 \models \forall x(\varphi(x, \bar{a}) \rightarrow \rho(x, \bar{a}))$  and  $\mathfrak{M} \models \forall x(\varphi(x, f(\bar{a})) \rightarrow \rho(x, f(\bar{a})))$ . Thus  $f(p)$  is isolated by  $\varphi(x, f(\bar{a}))$  and since  $\varphi(x, f(\bar{a}))$  can be realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ , so can be  $f(p)$ . **Now we prove  $f(p)$  is indeed a type. If there are  $\varphi(x, \bar{x}) \in \text{tp}(b\bar{b}) \setminus f(p)$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M}_0 \not\models \varphi(a, \bar{a})$  and thus  $\neg\varphi(x, \bar{x}) \in f(p) \subseteq \text{tp}(b\bar{b})$ , a contradiction.**  $\square$

**Theorem 4.26.** *All prime models of  $T$  are isomorphic*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  and  $\mathfrak{M}'_0$  be two prime models. Since prime models are atomic, elementary maps between finite subsets of  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  and  $\mathfrak{M}'_0$  can be extended to all finite extensions. Since  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  and  $\mathfrak{M}'_0$  are countable, it follows as Lemma 4.13 that  $\mathfrak{M}_0 \cong \mathfrak{M}'_0$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 4.27.** *Prime models are  $\omega$ -homogeneous*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  be prime and  $\bar{a}$  any tuple of elements from  $M_0$ . By Theorem 4.25,  $(\mathfrak{M}_0, \bar{a})$  is a prime model of its theory **as it's still countable and atomic**. The claim follows now from Theorem 4.26  $\square$

**Definition 4.28.** The isolated types are **dense** in  $T$  if every consistent  $L$ -formulas  $\psi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  belongs to an isolated type  $p(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in S_n(T)$

**Theorem 4.29.**  *$T$  has a prime model iff the isolated types are dense*

*Proof.* Suppose  $T$  has a prime model  $\mathfrak{M}$  (so  $\mathfrak{M}$  is atomic by Theorem 4.25). Since consistent formulas  $\psi(\bar{x})$  are realised in all models of  $T$ ,  $\psi(\bar{x})$  is realised by an atomic tuple  $\bar{a}$  and  $\psi(\bar{x})$  belongs to the isolated type  $\text{tp}(\bar{a})$

For the other direction notice that a structure  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  is atomic iff for all  $n$  the set

$$\Sigma_n(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \{\neg\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n) \mid \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n) \text{ complete}\}$$

is not realised in  $\mathfrak{M}_0$ .  **$\bar{a}$  is atomic iff it realise at least one complete formula.**

Hence by Corollary 4.3, it's enough to show that the  $\Sigma_n$  are not isolated in  $T$ . This is the case iff for every consistent  $\psi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  there is a complete formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  with  $T \not\models \forall \bar{x}(\psi(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \neg\varphi(\bar{x}))$ .  **$\Sigma_n$  is not isolated iff for every complete formula  $\theta$  there exists  $\gamma \in \Sigma_n$  s.t.  $T \not\models \theta \rightarrow \gamma$ .  $\gamma$  here is of the form  $\neg\varphi$  and we loose the condition of  $\theta$ .** Since  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  is complete, this is equivalent to  $T \models \forall \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}) \rightarrow \psi(\bar{x}))$ . We conclude that  $\Sigma_n$  is not isolated iff the isolated  $n$ -types are dense  $\square$

**Example 4.2.** Let  $T$  be the language having a unary predicate  $P_s$  for every finite 0-1-sequence  $s \in 2^{<\omega}$ . The axioms of Tree say that the  $P_s, s \in 2^{<\omega}$ , form a binary decomposition of the universe

- $\forall x P_\emptyset(x)$
- $\exists x P_s(x)$
- $\forall x ((P_{s0}(x) \vee P_{s1}(x)) \leftrightarrow P_s(x))$
- $\forall x \neg(P_{s0}(x) \wedge P_{s1}(x))$

Tree is complete and has quantifier elimination. There are no complete formulas and no prime model

See Marker to see the full content

**Definition 4.30.** A family of formulas  $\varphi_s(\bar{x})$ ,  $s \in 2^{<\omega}$  is a **binary tree** if for all  $s \in 2^{<\omega}$  the following holds

1.  $T \models \forall \bar{x} ((\varphi_{s0}(\bar{x}) \vee \varphi_{s1}(\bar{x})) \rightarrow \varphi_s(\bar{x}))$
2.  $T \models \forall \bar{x} \neg(\varphi_{s0}(\bar{x}) \wedge \varphi_{s1}(\bar{x}))$

**Theorem 4.31.** Let  $T$  be a complete theory

1. If  $T$  is small, it has no binary tree of consistent  $L$ -formulas. If  $T$  is countable, the converse holds as well
2. If  $T$  has no binary tree of consistent  $L$ -formulas, the isolated types are dense

*Proof.* 1. Let  $(\varphi_s(x_1, \dots, x_n))$  be a binary tree of consistent formulas. Then, for all  $\eta \in 2^\omega$ , the set

$$\{\varphi_s(\bar{x}) \mid s \subseteq \eta\}$$

is consistent and therefore is contained in some type  $p_\eta(\bar{x}) \in S_n(T)$ . The  $p_\eta(\bar{x})$  are all different showing that  $T$  is not small.  $\square$

**Exercise 4.5.1.** Countable theories without a binary tree of consistent formulas are small

*Proof.* If countable theory  $T$  is not small.  $\square$

**Exercise 4.5.2.** Show that isolated types being dense is equivalent to isolated types being (topologically) dense in the Stone space  $S_n(T)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $S = \{\text{the isolated types in } S_n(T)\}$ .  $S$  is dense in  $S_n(T)$  iff  $\bar{S} = S_n(T)$ . For any  $p \in S_n(T) \setminus S$ ,  $p$  is non-isolated. For any  $p \in [\phi]$ ,  $\phi$  belongs to an isolated type  $q$ . Thus  $q \in S_n(T) \cap S$ . Hence  $\bar{S} = S_n(T)$ .  $\square$



## 5 $\aleph_1$ -categorical Theories

### 5.1 Indiscernibles

**Definition 5.1.** Let  $I$  be a linear order and  $\mathfrak{A}$  an  $L$ -structure. A family  $(a_i)_{i \in I}$  of elements of  $A$  is called a **sequence of indiscernibles** if for all  $L$ -formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and all  $i_1 < \dots < i_n$  and  $j_1 < \dots < j_n$  from  $I$

$$\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi(a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_n}) \leftrightarrow \varphi(a_{j_1}, \dots, a_{j_n})$$

if two of the  $a_i$  are equal, all  $a_i$  are the same. Therefore it is often assumed that the  $a_i$  are distinct

Sometimes sequences of indiscernibles are also called **order indiscernible** to distinguish them from **totally indiscernible** sequences in which the ordering of the index set does not matter.

**Definition 5.2.** Let  $I$  be an infinite linear order and  $\mathcal{J} = (a_i)_{i \in I}$  a sequence of  $k$ -tuples in  $\mathfrak{M}$ ,  $A \subseteq M$ . The **Ehrenfeucht-Mostowski type**  $\text{EM}(\mathcal{J}/A)$  of  $\mathcal{J}$  over  $A$  is the set of  $L(A)$ -formulas  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  with  $\mathfrak{M} \models \varphi(a_{i_1}, \dots, a_{i_n})$  for all  $i_1 < \dots < i_n \in I$ ,  $n < \omega$

**Lemma 5.3** (The Standard Lemma). *Let  $I$  and  $J$  be two infinite linear orders and  $\mathcal{J} = (a_i)_{i \in I}$  a sequence of elements of a structure  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Then there is structure  $\mathfrak{N} \equiv \mathfrak{M}$  with an indiscernible sequences  $(b_j)_{j \in J}$  realizing the Ehrenfeucht-Mostowski type  $\text{EM}(\mathcal{J})$  of  $\mathcal{J}$*

We can also find a model  $\mathfrak{N} \succ \mathfrak{M}$

**Corollary 5.4.** *Assume that  $T$  has an infinite model. Then for any linear order  $I$ ,  $T$  has a model with a sequence  $(a_i)_{i \in I}$  of distinct indiscernibles*

Let  $[A]^n$  denote the set of all  $n$ -element subsets of  $A$

**Theorem 5.5** (Ramsey). *Let  $A$  be infinite and  $n \in \omega$ . Partition the set of  $n$ -elements subsets  $[A]^n$  into subsets  $C_1, \dots, C_k$ . Then there is an infinite subset of  $A$  whose  $n$ -element subsets all belong to the same subset  $C_i$*

*Proof.* Thinking of the partition as a colouring on  $[A]^n$ , we are looking for an infinite subset  $B$  of  $A$  s.t.  $[B]^n$  is monochromatic. We prove the theorem by induction on  $n$ . For  $n = 1$ , the statement is evident from the pigeonhole principle since there are infinite elements and finite colors.

Assuming the theorem is true for  $n$ , we now prove it for  $n+1$ . Let  $a_0 \in A$ . Then any colouring of  $[A]^{n+1}$  induces a colouring of the  $n$ -element subsets

of  $A' = A \setminus \{a_0\}$ : just colour  $x \in [A']^n$  by the colour of  $\{a_0\} \cup x \in [A]^{n+1}$ . By the induction hypothesis, there exists an infinite monochromatic subset  $B_1$  of  $A'$  in the induced colouring. Thus, all the  $(n+1)$ -element subsets of  $A$  consisting of  $a_0$  and  $n$  elements of  $B_1$  have the same colour but  $\{a_0\} \cup B$  is not our desired set.

Now pick any  $a_1 \in B_1$ . By the same argument we obtain an infinite subset  $B_2 \subseteq B_1$  with the same properties. We thus construct an infinite sequence  $A = B_0 \supset B_1 \supset B_2 \supset \dots$  and elements  $a_i \in B_i \setminus B_{i+1}$  s.t. the colour of each  $(n+1)$ -element subset  $\{a_{i(0)}, \dots, a_{i(n)}\}$  with  $i(0) < i(1) < \dots < i(n)$  depends only on the value of  $i(0)$ .

$$a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, \dots$$

Again by the pigeonhole principle there are infinitely many values of  $i(0)$  for which this colour will be the same and we take  $\{a_{i(0)}\}$ . These  $a_{i(0)}$  then yields the desired monochromatic set.  $\square$

*Proof of Lemma ??.* Choose a set  $C$  of new constants with an ordering isomorphic to  $J$ . Consider the theories

$$\begin{aligned} T' &= \{\varphi(\bar{c}) \mid \varphi(\bar{x}) \in \text{EM}(\mathcal{I})\} \\ T'' &= \{\varphi(\bar{c}) \leftrightarrow \varphi(\bar{d}) \mid \bar{c}, \bar{d} \in C\} \end{aligned}$$

Here the  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  are  $L$ -formulas and  $\bar{c}, \bar{d}$  tuples in increasing order. We have to show that  $T \cup T' \cup T''$  is consistent. It is enough to show that

$$T_{C_0, \Delta} = T \cup \{\varphi(\bar{c}) \in T' \mid \bar{c} \in C_0\} \cup \{\varphi(\bar{c}) \leftrightarrow \varphi(\bar{d}) \mid \varphi(\bar{x}) \in \Delta, \bar{c}, \bar{d} \in C_0\}$$

is consistent for finite sets  $C_0$  and  $\Delta$ . Note that  $\text{Diag}_{\text{el}}(\mathfrak{M}) \subseteq T$ . We can assume that the elements of  $\Delta$  are formulas with free variables  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  and that all tuples  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{d}$  have the same length

for notational simplicity we assume that all  $a_i$  are different. So we may consider  $A = \{a_i \mid i \in I\}$  as an ordered set, which is the interpretation of  $C$ . We define an equivalence relation on  $[A]^n$  by

$$\bar{a} \sim \bar{b} \iff \mathfrak{M} \models \varphi(\bar{a}) \leftrightarrow \varphi(\bar{b}) \text{ for all } \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \Delta$$

where  $\bar{a}, \bar{b}$  are tuples in increasing order. Since this equivalence has at most  $2^{|\Delta|}$  many classes, by Ramsey's Theorem there is an infinite subset  $B \subseteq A$  with all  $n$ -element subsets in the same equivalence class. We interpret the constants  $c \in C_0$  by elements  $b_c$  in  $B$  ordered in the same way as the  $c$ . Then  $(\mathfrak{M}, b_c)_{c \in C_0}$  is a model of  $T_{C_0, \Delta}$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 5.6.** Assume  $L$  is countable. If the  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is generated by a well-ordered sequence  $(a_i)$  of indiscernibles, then  $\mathfrak{M}$  realises only countably many types over every countable subset of  $M$

*Proof.* : need more time to think

If  $A = \{a_i \mid i \in I\}$ , then every element  $b \in M$  has the form  $b = t(\bar{a})$ , where  $t$  is an  $L$ -term and  $\bar{a}$  is a tuple from  $A$  since  $\mathfrak{M}$  is generated by  $(a_i)$

Consider a countable subset  $S$  of  $M$ . Write

$$S = \{t_n^{\mathcal{M}}(\bar{a}^n) \mid n \in \omega\}$$

Let  $A_0 = \{a_i \mid i \in I_0\}$  be the (countable) set of elements of  $A$  which occur in the  $\bar{a}^n$ . Then every type  $\text{tp}(b/S)$  is determined by  $\text{tp}(b/A_0)$  since every  $L(S)$ -formula

$$\varphi(x, t_{n_1}^{\mathcal{M}}(\bar{a}^{n_1}), \dots)$$

can be replaced by the  $L(A_0)$ -formula  $\varphi(x, t_{n_1}(\bar{a}^{n_1}), \dots)$

$$\text{tp}(b/A_0) = \text{tp}(t(\bar{a})/A_0) = \{\varphi(\bar{x}) \mid \varphi(\bar{x}) \text{ } \mathcal{L}_{A_0}\text{-formula} : \mathfrak{M} \models \varphi(t(\bar{a}))\}.$$

Now the type of  $b = t(\bar{a})$  over  $A_0$  depends only on  $t(\bar{x})$  (countably many possibilities) and the type  $\text{tp}(\bar{a}/A_0)$  (really?). Write  $\bar{a} = a_{\bar{i}}$  for a tuple  $\bar{i}$  from  $I$ . Since the  $a_i$  are indiscernible, the type depends only on the quantifier-free type  $\text{tp}_{\text{qf}}(\bar{i}/I_0)$  in the structure  $(I, <)$  since it has quantifier elimination. This type again depends on  $\text{tp}_{\text{qf}}(\bar{i})$  (finitely many possibilities) and on the types  $p(x) = \text{tp}_{\text{qf}}(i/I_0)$  of the elements  $i$  (Note the quantifier elimination, then we only need to Booleanly combine these things to get  $\text{tp}_{\text{qf}}(\bar{i}/I_0)$  of  $\bar{i}$ . There are three kinds of such types:

1.  $\bar{i}$  is bigger than all elements of  $I_0$
2.  $\bar{i}$  is an element  $i_0$  of  $I_0$
3. For some  $i_0 \in I_0$ ,  $\bar{i}$  is smaller than  $i_0$  but bigger than all elements of  $\{j \in I_0 \mid j < i_0\}$

There is only one type in the first case, in the other case the type is determined by  $i_0$ . This results in countably many possibilities for each component of  $\bar{i}$  □

**Definition 5.7.** Let  $L$  be a language. A **Skolem theory**  $\text{Skolem}(L)$  is a theory in a bigger language  $L_{\text{Skolem}}$  with the following properties

1.  $\text{Skolem}(L)$  has quantifier elimination

2.  $\text{Skolem}(L)$  is universal
3. Every  $L$ -structure can be expanded to a model of  $\text{Skolem}(L)$
4.  $|L_{\text{Skolem}}| \leq \max(|L|, \aleph_0)$

**Theorem 5.8.** *Every language  $L$  has a Skolem theory.*

*Proof.* Nice slide. We have

1.  $\exists x P(x)$  is a consequence of  $P(a)$
2.  $P(a)$  is not a consequence of  $\exists x P(x)$ , but a model of  $\exists x P(x)$  **provides** a model of  $P(a)$

Skolemization eliminates existential quantifiers and transforms a closed formula  $A$  to a formula  $B$  such that :

- $A$  is a consequence of  $B$ ,  $B \models A$
- every model of  $A$  **provides** a model of  $B$

Hence,  $A$  has a model if and only if  $B$  has a model : *skolemization preserves the existence of a model*, in other words it *preserves satisfiability*.

We define an ascending sequence of languages

$$L = L_0 \subseteq L_1 \subseteq L_2 \subseteq \dots$$

by introducing for every quantifier-free  $L_i$ -formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n, y)$  a new  $n$ -place **Skolem function**  $f_\varphi$  (if  $n = 0$ ,  $f_\varphi$  is a constant) and defining  $L_{i+1}$  as the union of  $L_i$  and the set of these function symbols. The language  $L_{\text{Skolem}}$  is the union of all  $L_i$ . We now define the Skolem theory as

$$\text{Skolem} = \{ \forall \bar{x} (\exists y \varphi(\bar{x}, y) \rightarrow \varphi(\bar{x}, f_\varphi(\bar{x}))) \mid \varphi(\bar{x}, y) \text{ q.f. } L_{\text{Skolem}}\text{-formula} \}$$

□

**Corollary 5.9.** *Let  $T$  be a countable theory with an infinite model and let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal. Then  $T$  has a model of cardinality  $\kappa$  which realises only countably many types over every countable subset.*

*Proof.* Consider the theory  $T^* = T \cup \text{Skolem}(L)$ . Then  $T^*$  is countable, has an infinite model and quantifier elimination

**Claim.**  $T^*$  is equivalent to a universal theory

*Proof.* Modulo  $\text{Skolem}(L)$  every axiom  $\varphi$  of  $T$  is equivalent to a quantifier-free  $L_{\text{Skolem}}$ -sentence  $\varphi^*$ . Therefore  $T^*$  is equivalent to the universal theory

Let  $I$  be a well-ordering of cardinality  $\kappa$  and  $\mathfrak{N}^*$  a model of  $T^*$  with indiscernibles  $(a_i)_{i \in I}$  (Existence by the Standard Lemma 5.3). The claim implies that the substructure  $\mathfrak{M}^*$  generated by the  $a_i$  is a model of  $T^*$  and  $\mathfrak{M}^*$  has cardinality  $\kappa$  (As we can't control the size of an elementary extension and Corollary 3.5). Since  $T^*$  has quantifier elimination,  $\mathfrak{M}^*$  is an elementary substructure of  $\mathfrak{N}^*$  and  $(a_i)$  is indiscernible in  $\mathfrak{M}^*$ . By Lemma 5.6, there are only countably many types over every countable set realised in  $\mathfrak{M}^*$ . The same is then true for the reduct  $\mathfrak{M} = \mathfrak{M}^*|_L$   $\square$

*Exercise 5.1.1.* A sequence of elements in  $(\mathbb{Q}, <)$  is indiscernible iff it is either constant, strictly increasing or strictly decreasing

*Proof.* For any formula  $\varphi(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ ,

$$\mathbb{Q} \models \varphi(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \leftrightarrow$$

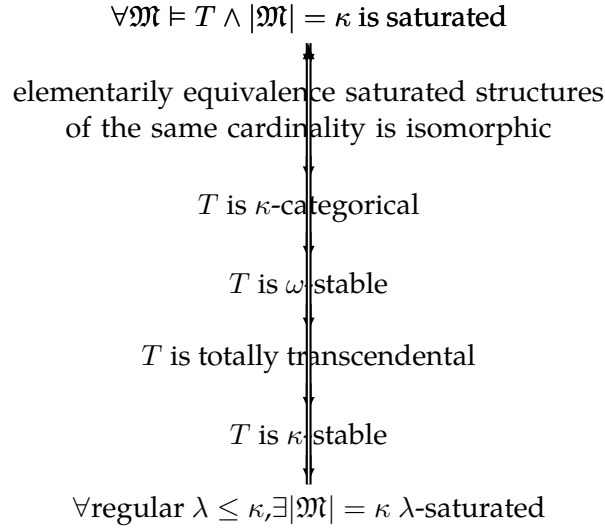
$\square$

## 5.2 $\omega$ -stable theories

In this section we fix a complete theory  $T$  with infinite models

Our goal is theorem 5.20

**Theorem 5.10.** *A countable theory  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical iff all models of cardinality  $\kappa$  are saturated*



In the previous section we saw that we may add indiscernible elements to a model without changing the number of realised types. We will now use this to show that  $\aleph_1$ -categorical theories have a small number of types, i.e., they are  $\omega$ -stable. Conversely, with few types it is easier to be saturated and since saturated structures are unique we find the connection to categorical theories.

**Definition 5.11.** Let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal. We say  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -**stable** if in each model of  $T$ , over every set of parameters of size at most  $\kappa$ , and for each  $n$ , there are at most  $\kappa$  many  $n$ -types, i.e.,

$$|A| \leq \kappa \Rightarrow |S_n(A)| \leq \kappa$$

Note that if  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable, then - up to logical equivalence - we have  $|T| \leq \kappa$  (Exercise 5.2.3)

**Lemma 5.12.**  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable iff  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable for 1-types, i.e.,

$$|A| \leq \kappa \Rightarrow |S(A)| \leq \kappa$$

*Proof.* Assume that  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable for 1-types. We show that  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable for  $n$ -types by induction on  $n$ . Let  $A$  be a subset of the model  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $|A| \leq \kappa$ . We may assume that all types over  $A$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$  (otherwise we take some elementary extensions by Corollary 2.14). Consider the restriction map  $\pi : S_n(A) \rightarrow S_1(A)$ . By assumption the image  $S_1(A)$  has cardinality at most  $\kappa$ . Every  $p \in S_1(A)$  has the form  $\text{tp}(a/A)$  for some  $a \in M$  since all types over  $A$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . By Exercise 4.2.3, the fibre  $\pi^{-1}(p)$  is in bijection with  $S_{n-1}(aA)$  and so has cardinality at most  $\kappa$  by induction. This shows  $|S_n(A)| \leq \kappa \cdot \kappa = \kappa$ .  $\square$

**Example 5.1** (Algebraically closed fields). The theories  $\text{ACF}_p$  for  $p$  a prime or 0 are  $\kappa$ -stable for all  $\kappa$

Note that by Theorem 5.15 below it would suffice to prove that the theories  $\text{ACF}_p$  are  $\omega$ -stable

*Proof.* Let  $K$  be a subfield of an algebraically closed field. By quantifier elimination, the type of an element  $a$  over  $K$  is determined by the isomorphism type of the extension  $K[a]/K$ . If  $a$  is transcendental over  $K$ ,  $K[a]$  is isomorphic to the polynomial ring  $K[X]$ . If  $a$  is algebraic with minimal polynomial  $f \in K[X]$ , then  $K[a]$  is isomorphic to  $K[X]/(f)$ . So there is one more 1-type over  $K$  than there are irreducible polynomials  $\square$

That  $\text{ACF}_p$  is  $\kappa$ -stable for  $n$ -types has a direct algebraic proof: the isomorphism type of  $K[a_1, \dots, a_n]/K$  is determined by the vanishing ideal  $P$  of  $a_1, \dots, a_n$ . By :(((

**Theorem 5.13.** *A countable theory  $T$  which is categorical in an uncountable cardinal  $\kappa$  is  $\omega$ -stable*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{N}$  be a model and  $A \subseteq N$  countable with  $S(A)$  uncountable. Let  $(b_i)_{i \in I}$  be a sequence of  $\aleph_1$  many elements with pairwise distinct types over  $A$ . (Note that we can assume that all types over  $A$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{N}$ ) We choose first an elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  of cardinality  $\aleph_1$  which contains  $A$  and all  $b_i$ . Then we choose an elementary extension  $\mathfrak{M}$  of  $\mathfrak{M}_0$ . The model  $\mathfrak{M}$  is of cardinality  $\kappa$  and realises uncountably many types over the countable set  $A$ . By Corollary 5.9,  $T$  has another model where this is not the case. So  $T$  cannot be  $\kappa$ -categorical  $\square$

**Definition 5.14.** A theory  $T$  is **totally transcendental** if it has no model  $\mathfrak{M}$  with a binary tree of consistent  $L(M)$ -formulas

**Theorem 5.15.** 1.  *$\omega$ -stable theories are totally transcendental*

2. *Totally transcendental theories are  $\kappa$ -stable for all  $\kappa \geq |T|$*

It follows that a countable theory  $T$  is  $\omega$ -stable iff it is totally transcendental

*Proof.* 1. Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model with a binary tree of consistent  $L(M)$ -formulas with free variables among  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ . The set  $A$  of parameters which occur in the tree's formulas is countable but  $S_n(A)$  has cardinality  $2^{\aleph_0}$

2. Assume that there are more than  $\kappa$  many  $n$ -types over some set  $A$  of cardinality  $\kappa$ . Let us call an  $L(A)$ -formula **big** if it belongs to more than  $\kappa$  many types over  $A$  ( $|\phi| > \kappa$ ) and **thin** otherwise. By assumption the true formula is big. If we can show that each big formula decomposes into two big formulas, we can construct a binary tree of big formulas, which finishes the proof.

So assume that  $\varphi$  is big. Since each thin formula belongs to at most  $\kappa$  types and since there are at most  $\kappa$  formulas, there are at most  $\kappa$  types which contain thin formulas. Therefore  $\varphi$  belongs to two distinct types  $p$  and  $q$  which contain only big formulas. If we separate  $p$  and  $q$  by  $\psi \in p$  and  $\neg\psi \in q$ , we decompose  $\varphi$  into the big formulas  $\varphi \wedge \psi$  and  $\varphi \wedge \neg\psi$ .  $\square$

The proof and Lemma 5.12 show that  $T$  is totally transcendental iff there is no binary tree of consistent formulas in **one** free variables

The general case follows from Exercise 5.2.2

**Definition 5.16.** Let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal. An  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  is  $\kappa$ -**saturated** if in  $\mathfrak{A}$  all types over sets of cardinality less than  $\kappa$  are realised. An infinite structure  $\mathfrak{A}$  is **saturated** if it is  $|\mathfrak{A}|$ -saturated

Lemma 4.13 generalises to sets

**Lemma 5.17.** *Elementarily equivalent saturated structures of the same cardinality are isomorphic*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  be elementary equivalent saturated structures each of cardinality  $\kappa$ . We choose enumerations  $(a_\alpha)_{\alpha < \kappa}$  and  $(b_\alpha)_{\alpha < \kappa}$  of  $A$  and  $B$  and construct an increasing sequence of elementary maps  $f_\alpha : A_\alpha \rightarrow B_\alpha$ . Assume that the  $f_\beta$  are constructed for all  $\beta < \alpha$ . The union of the  $f_\beta$  is an elementary map  $f_\alpha^* : A_\alpha^* \rightarrow B_\alpha^*$ . The construction will imply that  $A_\alpha^*$  and  $B_\alpha^*$  have cardinality at most  $|\alpha|$ , which is smaller than  $\kappa$

We write  $\alpha = \lambda + n$ , and distinguish two cases

$n = 2i$ : In this case, we consider  $p(x) = \text{tp}(a_{\lambda+i}/A_\alpha^*)$ . Realise  $f_\alpha^*(p)$  by  $b \in B$  and define

$$f_\alpha = f_\alpha^* \cup \{\langle a_{\lambda+i}, b \rangle\}$$

$n = 2i + 1$ : Similarly, we find an extension

$$f_\alpha = f_\alpha^* \cup \{\langle a, b_{\lambda+i} \rangle\}$$

Thus  $\bigcup_{\alpha < \kappa} f_\alpha$  is the desired isomorphism □

**Lemma 5.18.** *Let  $S_0 \subseteq S_1 \subseteq \dots \subseteq S_\alpha \subseteq \dots$  be an increasing chain of sets indexed by  $\alpha < \kappa$  for some regular cardinal  $\kappa$ . If  $A \subseteq \bigcup_{\alpha < \kappa} S_\alpha$  and  $|A| < \kappa$ , then  $A \subseteq S_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha < \kappa$*

*Proof.* Define  $f : A \rightarrow \kappa$  by  $f(x) = \min\{\alpha : x \in S_\alpha\}$ . Then  $|f(A)| \leq |A| < \kappa$ , so  $\alpha := \sup f(A) < \kappa$ . For any  $x \in A$ , we have  $f(x) \leq \alpha$ , and so  $x \in S_{f(x)} \subseteq S_\alpha$  and thus  $A \subseteq S_\alpha$  □

**Lemma 5.19.** *If  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable, then for all regular  $\lambda \leq \kappa$ , there is a model of cardinality  $\kappa$  which is  $\lambda$ -saturated*

*Proof.* By Exercise 5.2.3 we may assume that  $|T| \leq \kappa$ . Consider a model  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality  $\kappa$ . Since  $S(M_\alpha)$  has cardinality  $\kappa$ , Corollary 2.14 and the Löwenheim–Skolem theorem give an elementary extension of cardinality



$\kappa$  in which all types over  $\mathfrak{M}$  are realised. So can construct a continuous elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{M}_0 < \mathfrak{M}_1 < \dots < \mathfrak{M}_\alpha < \dots (\alpha < \lambda)$$

of models of  $T$  with cardinality  $\kappa$  s.t. all  $p \in S(M_\alpha)$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{M}_{\alpha+1}$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\lambda$ -saturated. In fact, if  $|A| < \lambda$  and if  $a \in A$  is contained in  $M_{\alpha(a)}$  then  $\Lambda = \bigcup_{a \in A} \alpha(a)$  is an initial segment of  $\lambda$  of smaller cardinality than  $\lambda$ . We can find since  $\kappa$  is regular iff  $\text{cf}(\kappa) = \kappa$  iff  $\forall \alpha < \kappa, \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} M_\beta \subsetneq M$ . Thus there is  $\gamma < \kappa$  s.t.  $\bigcup_{\beta < \gamma} S_\beta$ . So  $\Lambda$  has an upper bound  $\mu < \lambda$ . It follows that  $A \subseteq \mathfrak{M}_\mu$  and all types over  $A$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{M}_{\mu+1}$   $\square$

*Remark.* If  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable for a regular cardinal  $\kappa$ , the previous lemma yields a saturated model of cardinality  $\kappa$ .

**Theorem 5.20.** *A countable theory  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical iff all models of cardinality  $\kappa$  are saturated*

*Proof.* If all models of cardinality  $\kappa$  are saturated, it follows from Lemma 5.17 that  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical

Assume, for the converse that  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical. For  $\kappa = \aleph_0$  the theorem follows from Theorem 4.11. So we may assume that  $\kappa$  is uncountable. Then  $T$  is totally transcendental by Theorem 5.13 and 5.15 and therefore  $\kappa$ -stable by Theorem 5.15.

By Lemma 5.19, all models of  $T$  of cardinality  $\kappa$  are  $\mu^+$ -saturated for all  $\mu < \kappa$ . i.e.,  $\kappa$ -saturated  $\square$

*Exercise 5.2.1.* Show that the theory of an equivalence relation with two infinite classes has quantifier elimination and is  $\omega$ -stable. Is it  $\aleph_1$ -categorical?

*Exercise 5.2.2.* If  $T$  is an  $L$ -theory and  $K$  is a sublanguage of  $L$ , the **reduct**  $T \upharpoonright K$  is the set of all  $K$ -sentences which follow from  $T$ . Show that  $T$  is totally transcendental iff  $T \upharpoonright K$  is  $\omega$ -stable for all at most countable  $K \subseteq L$

*Proof.*  $\square$

*Exercise 5.2.3.* If  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable, then *essentially* (i.e., up to logical equivalence)  $|T| \leq \kappa$

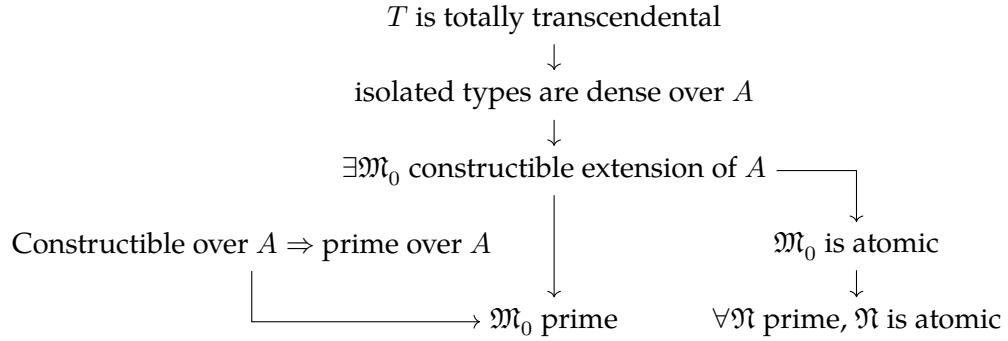
*Proof.* First for any  $\varphi, \psi \in T$ , define  $\varphi \sim \psi$  iff  $T \models \varphi \leftrightarrow \psi$ . If  $|T / \sim| > \kappa$ .

If  $T \not\models \varphi \leftrightarrow \psi$ , then  $T \models (\varphi \wedge \neg\psi) \vee (\neg\varphi \wedge \psi)$ . Thus for any non-equivalent  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$ , they belong to different types. Thus  $|S_n(T)| > \kappa$ .

If  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -stable, then  $|S_n(\emptyset)| \leq \kappa$ . Choose for any two  $n$ -types over the empty set a separating formula  $\varphi$ . Then any formula is logically equivalent to a finite Boolean combination of these  $\kappa$ -many formulas.  $\square$

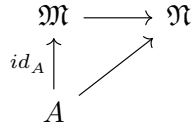
### 5.3 Prime extensions

For any model  $\mathfrak{M} \models T$  and any  $A \subseteq \mathfrak{M}$



**Definition 5.21.** Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$  and  $A \subseteq M$ .

1.  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a **prime extension** of  $A$  (or **prime over**  $A$ ) if every elementary map  $A \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$  extends to an elementary map  $\mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$



2.  $B \subseteq M$  is **constructible** over  $A$  if  $B$  has an enumeration

$$B = \{b_\alpha \mid \alpha < \lambda\}$$

where each  $b_\alpha$  is atomic over  $A \cup B_\alpha$  ( $\text{tp}(b_\alpha/A \cup B_\alpha)$  is isolated), with  $B_\alpha = \{b_\mu \mid \mu < \alpha\}$

So  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a prime extension of  $A$  iff  $\mathfrak{M}_A$  is a prime model of  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{M}_A)$

**Lemma 5.22.** If a model  $M$  is constructible over  $A$ , then  $\mathfrak{M}$  is prime over  $A$

*Proof.* Let  $(m_\alpha)_{\alpha < \lambda}$  an enumeration of  $M$ , s.t. each  $m_\alpha$  is atomic over  $A \cup M_\alpha$ . Let  $f : A \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$  be an elementary map. We define inductively an increasing sequence of elementary maps  $f_\alpha : A \cup M_{\alpha+1} \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$  with  $f_0 = f$ . Assume that  $f_\beta$  is defined for all  $\beta < \alpha$ . The union of these  $f_\beta$  is an elementary map  $f'_\alpha : A \cup M_\alpha \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$ . Since  $p(x) = \text{tp}(a_\alpha/A \cup M_\alpha)$  is isolated,  $f'_\alpha(p) \in S(f'_\alpha(A \cup M_\alpha))$  is also isolated and has a realisation  $b$  in  $\mathfrak{N}$ . We set  $f_\alpha = f'_\alpha \cup \{\langle a_\alpha, b \rangle\}$

Finally, the union of all  $f_\alpha$  ( $\alpha < \lambda$ ) is an elementary embedding  $\mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 5.23.** *If  $T$  is totally transcendental, every subset of a model of  $T$  has a constructible prime extension*

**Marker's Theorem 4.2.11**

**Lemma 5.24.** *If  $T$  is totally transcendental, the isolated types are dense over every subset of any model*

*Proof.* Consider a subset  $A$  of a model  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Then  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{M}_A) \supset T$  has no binary tree of consistent formulas. By Theorem 4.31, the isolated types in  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{M}_A)$  are dense  $\square$

*Proof of Theorem 5.23.* By Lemma 5.22 it suffices to construct an elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{M}_0 < \mathfrak{M}$  which contains  $A$  and is constructible over  $A$ . An application of Zorn's Lemma gives us a maximal construction  $(a_\alpha)_{\alpha < \lambda}$ , which cannot be prolonged by an element  $a_\lambda \in M \setminus A_\lambda$ . **We need to show first that we can find  $a$  s.t.  $a$  is atomic over  $A$ . But as the isolated types are dense over  $A$ , pick an  $L(A)$ -formula  $\varphi$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{M} \models \varphi(a)$ . Then  $a$  is atomic over  $A$ .** Clearly  $A$  is contained in  $A_\lambda$ . We show that  $A_\lambda$  is the universe of an elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  using Tarski's Test. So assume that  $\varphi(x)$  is an  $L(A_\lambda)$ -formula and  $\mathfrak{M} \models \exists x \varphi(x)$ . Since isolated types over  $A_\lambda$  are dense by Lemma 5.24, there is an isolated  $p(x) \in S(A_\lambda)$  containing  $\varphi(x)$ . Let  $b$  be a realisation of  $p(x)$  in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . We can prolong our construction by  $a_\lambda = b$ ; thus  $b \in A_\lambda$  by maximality and  $\varphi(x)$  is realised in  $A_\lambda$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 5.25.** *Let  $a$  and  $b$  be two finite tuples of elements of a structure  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Then  $\text{tp}(ab)$  is atomic iff  $\text{tp}(a/b)$  and  $\text{tp}(b)$  are atomic*

*Proof.* If  $\varphi(x, y)$  isolates  $\text{tp}(a, b)$ . As in the proof of Theorem 4.25,  $\varphi(x, b)$  isolates  $\text{tp}(a/b)$  and we claim that  $\exists x \varphi(x, y)$  isolates  $p(y) = \text{tp}(b)$ : we have  $\exists x \varphi(x, y) \in p(y)$  and if  $\sigma(y) \in p(y)$ , then

$$\mathfrak{M} \models \forall x, y (\varphi(x, y) \rightarrow \sigma(y))$$

Hence  $\mathfrak{M} \models \forall y (\exists x \varphi(x, y) \rightarrow \sigma(y))$ .

Now conversely, assume that  $\rho(x, b)$  isolates  $\text{tp}(a/b)$  and that  $\sigma(y)$  isolates  $p(y) = \text{tp}(b)$ . Then  $\rho(x, y) \wedge \sigma(y)$  isolates. Firstly,  $\rho(x, y) \wedge \sigma(y) \in \text{tp}(a, b)$ . If  $\varphi(x, y) \in \text{tp}(a, b)$ , then  $\varphi(x, b) \in \text{tp}(a/b)$  and

$$\mathfrak{M} \models \forall x (\rho(x, b) \rightarrow \varphi(x, b))$$

Hence

$$\forall x (\rho(x, y) \rightarrow \varphi(x, y)) \in p(y)$$

and it follows that

$$\mathfrak{M} \models \forall y(\sigma(y) \rightarrow \forall x(\rho(x, y) \rightarrow \varphi(x, y)))$$

Thus  $\mathfrak{M} \models \forall x, y(\rho(x, y) \wedge \sigma(y) \rightarrow \varphi(x, y))$  □

**Corollary 5.26.** *Constructible extensions are atomic*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  be a constructible extension of  $A$  and let  $\bar{a}$  be a tuple from  $M_0$ . We have to show that  $\bar{a}$  is atomic over  $A$ . We can clearly assume that the elements of  $\bar{a}$  are pairwise distinct and do not belong to  $A$ . We can also permute the elements of  $\bar{a}$  so that

$$\bar{a} = a_\alpha \bar{b}$$

for some tuple  $\bar{b} \in A_\alpha$ . Let  $\varphi(x, \bar{c})$  be an  $L(A_\alpha)$ -formula which is complete over  $A_\alpha$  and satisfied by  $a_\alpha$ .  $a_\alpha$  is also atomic over  $A \cup \{\bar{b}\bar{c}\}$ . Using induction, we know that  $\bar{b}\bar{c}$  is atomic over  $A$ . **Note that  $\bar{b}\bar{c} \in A_\alpha$ , then we find a smaller ordinal. This process will end as there is no infinite decreasing sequence.** By Lemma 5.25 applied to  $(\mathfrak{M}_0)_A$ ,  $a_\alpha \bar{b}\bar{c}$  is atomic over  $A$ , which implies that  $\bar{a} = a_\alpha \bar{b}$  is atomic over  $A$ . □

**Corollary 5.27.** *If  $T$  is totally transcendental, prime extensions are atomic*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$  and  $A \subseteq M$ . Since  $A$  has at least one constructible extension  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  and since all prime extensions of  $A$  are contained in  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  (isomorphic over  $A$  to elementary substructure of  $\mathfrak{M}_0$ ), all prime extensions are atomic □

A structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is called a **minimal** extension of the subset  $A$  if  $M$  has no proper elementary substructure which contains  $A$

**Lemma 5.28.** *Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$  and  $A \subseteq M$ . If  $A$  has a prime extension and a minimal extension, they are isomorphic over  $A$ , i.e., there is an isomorphism fixing  $A$  elementwise*

*Proof.* A prime extension embeds elementarily in the minimal extension. This embedding must be surjective by minimality □

**Exercise 5.3.1.** For every countable  $T$  the following are equivalent

1. Every parameter set has a prime extension (We say that  $T$  has prime extensions)
2. Over every countable parameter set the isolated types are dense

3. Over every parameter set the isolated types are dense

*Proof.*  $3 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 1$  is from the text.

$1 \rightarrow 3$  from Theorem 4.29 □

## 5.4 Lachlan's Theorem

**Theorem 5.29** (Lachlan). *Let  $T$  be totally transcendental and  $\mathfrak{M}$  an uncountable model of  $T$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M}$  has arbitrary large elementary extensions which omit every countable set of  $L(M)$ -formulas that is omitted in  $\mathfrak{M}$ .*

*Proof.* We call an  $L(M)$ -formula **large** if its realisation set  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is uncountable. Since there is no infinite binary tree of large formulas, there exists a **minimal** large formula  $\varphi_0(x)$  in the sense that for every  $L(M)$ -formula  $\psi(x)$  either  $\varphi_0(x) \wedge \psi(x)$  or  $\varphi_0(x) \wedge \neg\psi(x)$  is at most countable. Now it's easy to see that

$$p(x) = \{\psi(x) \mid \varphi_0(x) \wedge \psi(x) \text{ large}\}$$

is a type in  $S(M)$ . **For any formula  $\psi$ , if  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) = (\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})) \cup (\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \neg\psi(\mathfrak{M}))$ . So exactly one of it belongs to  $p(x)$ .**

Clearly  $p(x)$  contains no formula of the form  $x \doteq a$  for  $a \in M$ , so  $p(x)$  is not realised in  $M$ . On the other hand, every countable subset  $\Pi(x) \subseteq p(x)$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ : since  $\varphi_0(\mathfrak{M}) \setminus \psi(\mathfrak{M}) = \varphi_0(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \neg\psi(\mathfrak{M})$  is at most countable for every  $\psi(x) \in \Pi(x)$ , the elements of  $\varphi_0(\mathfrak{M})$  which do not belong to the union of these sets realised  $\Pi(x)$ .

Let  $a$  be a realisation of  $p(x)$  in a (proper) elementary extension  $\mathfrak{N}$ . By Theorem 5.23, we can assume that  $\mathfrak{N}$  is atomic over  $\mathfrak{M} \cup \{a\}$ .

Fix  $b \in N$ . We have to show that every countable subset  $\Sigma(y) \subset \text{tp}(b/M)$  is realised in  $M$ . **If the countable set is omitted in  $\mathfrak{M}$ , then it is omitted in  $\mathfrak{N}$ .**

Let  $\chi(x, y)$  be an  $L(M)$ -formula s.t.  $\chi(a, y)$  isolates  $q(y) = \text{tp}(b/M \cup \{a\})$ . If  $b$  realised an  $L(M)$ -formula  $\sigma(y)$ , we have  $\mathfrak{N} \models \forall y(\chi(a, y) \rightarrow \sigma(y))$ . Hence the formula

$$\sigma^*(x) = \forall y(\chi(x, y) \rightarrow \sigma(y))$$

belongs to  $p(x)$   **$p(x) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{N}}(a/M)$** . Note that  $\exists y\chi(x, y)$  belongs also to  $p(x)$ .

Choose an element  $a' \in M$  which satisfies

$$\{\sigma^*(x) \mid \sigma \in \Sigma\} \cup \{\exists y\chi(x, y)\}$$

and choose  $b' \in M$  with  $\mathfrak{M} \models \chi(a', b')$ . Since  $\mathfrak{M} \models \sigma^*(a')$ ,  $\mathfrak{M} \models \sigma(b')$ . So  $b'$  realises  $\Sigma(y)$ .

We have shown that  $\mathfrak{M}$  has a proper elementary extension which realises no new countable set of  $L(M)$ -formulas. By iteration we obtain arbitrarily long chains of elementary extensions with the same property  $\square$

**Corollary 5.30.** *A countable theory which is  $\kappa$ -categorical for some uncountable  $\kappa$ , is  $\aleph_1$ -categorical* #+BEGIN<sub>corollary</sub>

*Proof.* Let  $T$  be  $\kappa$ -categorical and assume that  $T$  is not  $\aleph_1$ -categorical. Then  $T$  has a model  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality  $\aleph_1$  which is not saturated by Theorem 5.20.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{M} & \xrightarrow{\neq} & \mathfrak{N} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{M}' & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathfrak{N}' \end{array}$$

For any sentence  $\phi$ ,  $\mathfrak{M} \models \phi \Rightarrow \mathfrak{M}' \models \phi \Rightarrow \mathfrak{N}' \models \phi \Rightarrow \mathfrak{N} \models \phi$ . Thus  $\mathfrak{M} \equiv \mathfrak{N}$ . Then we can use Lemma 5.17. So there is a type  $p$  over a countable subset of  $M$  which is not realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . By Theorem 5.13 and 5.15  $T$  is totally transcendental and we have a atomic constructible prime extension. Theorem 5.29 gives an elementary extension  $\mathfrak{N}$  of  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality  $\kappa$  which omits all countable sets of formulas which are omitted in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Thus also  $p$  is also omitted. Since  $\mathfrak{N}$  is not saturated,  $T$  is not  $\kappa$ -categorical, a contradiction.  $\square$

*Exercise 5.4.1.* Prove in a similar way: if a countable theory  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical for some uncountable  $\kappa$ , it is  $\lambda$ -categorical for every uncountable  $\lambda \leq \kappa$

## 5.5 Vaughtian pairs

A crucial fact about uncountably categorical theories is the absence of definable sets whose size is independent of the size of the model in which they live

In this section,  $T$  is a countable complete theory with infinite models

$$\begin{array}{c} T \text{ doesn't have a Vaughtian pair} \implies T \text{ eliminates } \exists^\infty \\ \Downarrow \\ T \text{ is } \kappa\text{-categorical for } \kappa > \aleph_0 \\ \Downarrow \\ \text{Prime extension of } A \cup \varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \text{ is unique} \end{array}$$

**Definition 5.31.** We say that  $T$  has a **Vaughtian pair** if there are two models  $\mathfrak{M} < \mathfrak{N}$  and an  $L(M)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  s.t.

1.  $\mathfrak{M} \neq \mathfrak{N}$
2.  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is infinite
3.  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) = \varphi(\mathfrak{N})$

If  $\varphi(x)$  doesn't contain parameters, we say that  $T$  has a Vaughtian pair for  $\varphi(x)$

*Remark.* Notice that  $T$  does not have a Vaughtian pair iff every model  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a minimal extension of  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \cup A$  for any formula  $\varphi(x)$  with parameters in  $A \subseteq M$  which defines an infinite set in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . **If  $\mathfrak{M} < \mathfrak{N}$  is a Vaughtian pair and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) = \varphi(\mathfrak{N})$ . Then as  $\mathfrak{N}$  is the minimal extension of  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \cup A$ ,  $\mathfrak{N} < \mathfrak{M}$  and thus we have an isomorphism**

Let  $\mathfrak{N}$  be a model of  $T$  where  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$  is infinite but has smaller cardinality than  $\mathfrak{N}$ . The Löwenheim–Skolem Theorem yields an elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{M}$  of  $\mathfrak{N}$  which contains  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$  and has the same cardinality as  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M} < \mathfrak{N}$  is a Vaughtian pair for  $\varphi(x)$ . The next theorem shows that a converse of this observation is also true

**Theorem 5.32** (Vaught's Two-cardinal Theorem). *If  $T$  has a Vaughtian pair, it has a model  $\overline{\mathfrak{M}}$  of cardinality  $\aleph_1$  with  $\varphi(\overline{\mathfrak{M}})$  countable for some formula  $\varphi(x) \in L(\overline{M})$*

**Lemma 5.33.** *Let  $T$  be complete, countable and with infinite models*

1. *Every countable model of  $T$  has a countable  $\omega$ -homogeneous elementary extension*
2. *The union of an elementary chain of  $\omega$ -homogeneous models is  $\omega$ -homogeneous*
3. *Two  $\omega$ -homogeneous countable models of  $T$  realizing the same  $n$ -types for all  $n < \omega$  are isomorphic*

*Proof.* 1. Let  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  be a countable model of  $T$ . We realise the countably many types

$$\{f(\text{tp}(a/A)) \mid a, A \subseteq M_0, A \text{ finite}, f : A \rightarrow M_0 \text{ elementary}\}$$

in a countable elementary extension  $\mathfrak{M}_1$ . By iterating this process we obtain an elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{M}_0 < \mathfrak{M}_1 < \dots$$

whose union is  $\omega$ -homogeneous

2. Clear

3. Suppose  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  are  $\omega$ -homogeneous, countable and realise the same  $n$ -types. We show that we can extend any finite elementary map  $f : \{a_1, \dots, a_i\} \rightarrow \{b_1, \dots, b_i\}; a_j \mapsto b_j$  to any  $a \in A \setminus A_i$ . Realise the type  $\text{tp}(a_1, \dots, a_i, a)$  by some tuples  $\bar{b}' = b'_1, \dots, b'_{i+1}$  in  $B$ .  $\text{tp}^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, \dots, a_i, a) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{B}}(\bar{b}') \Rightarrow \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{B}}(b_1, \dots, b_i) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, \dots, a_i) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{B}}(b'_1, \dots, b'_i)$ .

Using the  $\omega$ -homogeneity of  $B$  we may extend the finite partial isomorphism  $g = \{(b'_j, b_j) \mid 1 \leq j \leq i\}$  by  $(b'_{i+1}, b)$  for some  $b \in B$ . Then  $f_{i+1} = f_i \cup \{(a, b)\}$  is the required extension. Reverse the roles of  $B$  and  $A$  we construct the desired isomorphism.  $\square$

*Proof of Theorem 5.32.* Suppose that the Vaughtian pair is witnessed (in certain models) by some formula  $\varphi(x)$ . For simplicity we assume that  $\varphi(x)$  does not contain parameters (see Exercise 5.5.2). Let  $P$  be a new unary predicate. It is easy to find an  $L(P)$ -theory  $T_{\text{VP}}$  whose models  $(\mathfrak{N}, M)$  consist of a model  $\mathfrak{N} \models T$  and a subset  $M$  defined by the new predicate  $P$  which is the universe of an elementary substructure  $\mathfrak{M}$  which together with  $\mathfrak{N}$  forms a Vaughtian pair for  $\varphi(x)$ . **We can express the condition for Vaughtian pair in first-order language with  $P$ :**

1.  $\exists x(\neg P(x))$
2. **For each  $k > 0$ ,  $\exists v_1 \dots v_k (\bigwedge_{i < j} v_i \neq v_j \wedge \bigwedge \varphi(v_i))$**
3.  $\forall x(\varphi(x) \rightarrow P(x))$

**And in addition, the elementary substructure**

4.  $\forall \bar{v}((\bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(v_i) \wedge \psi(\bar{v})) \rightarrow \psi^P(\bar{v}))$

**As in Marker's p152. Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be the elementary substructure of  $\mathfrak{N}$  by Löwenheim–Skolem Theorem.** The Löwenheim–Skolem Theorem applied to  $T_{\text{VP}}$  yields a Vaughtian pair  $\mathfrak{M}_0 < \mathfrak{N}_0$  for  $\varphi(x)$  with  $\mathfrak{M}_0, \mathfrak{N}_0$  countable

We first construct an elementary chain

$$(\mathfrak{N}_0, M_0) < (\mathfrak{N}_1, M_1) < \dots$$

of countable Vaughtian pairs, with the aim that both components of the union pair

$$(\mathfrak{N}, M)$$



are  $\omega$ -homogeneous and realise the same  $n$ -types. If  $(\mathfrak{N}_i, M_i)$  is given, we first choose a countable elementary extension  $(\mathfrak{N}', M')$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{M}'$  realises all  $n$ -types which are realised in  $\mathfrak{N}_i$ . **We only need to consider the 1-type. Then for each 1-type in  $\mathfrak{N}_i$ , add a constant.** Then we choose as in the proof of Lemma 5.33 a countable elementary extension  $(\mathfrak{N}_{i+1}, \mathfrak{M}_{i+1})$  of  $(\mathfrak{N}', M')$  for which  $\mathfrak{N}_{i+1}$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_{i+1}$  are  $\omega$ -homogeneous. **Prove: If  $(\mathfrak{N}, M)$  is a countable  $\omega$ -homogeneous elementary extension of  $(\mathfrak{N}', M')$ , then both  $\mathfrak{N}$  and  $\mathfrak{M}$  are homogeneous**

Suppose  $\text{tp}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\bar{a}) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\bar{b})$  where  $\bar{a}, \bar{b} \in M^n$  and take  $a \in \mathfrak{N}$ . For any  $\varphi(\bar{x}) \in \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{M}}(\bar{a})$ ,  $\varphi(\bar{x}) \in \text{tp}^{(\mathfrak{N}, M)}(\bar{a})$  and so  $\text{tp}^{(\mathfrak{N}, M)}(\bar{a}) = \text{tp}^{(\mathfrak{N}, M)}(\bar{b})$ . And there is  $b \in \mathfrak{N}$  s.t.  $\text{tp}^{(\mathfrak{N}, M)}(\bar{a}, a) = \text{tp}^{(\mathfrak{N}, M)}(\bar{b}, b)$ . But note that  $\bigwedge_{i=1}^{n+1} P(x_i) \in \text{tp}^{(\mathfrak{N}, M)}(\bar{b}, b)$  and hence  $b \in M$ .

It follows from Lemma 5.33 (3) that  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  are isomorphic since  $\mathfrak{M} < \mathfrak{N}$ .

Next we construct a continuous elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{M}^0 < \mathfrak{M}^1 < \dots < \mathfrak{M}^\alpha < \dots \quad (\alpha < \omega_1)$$

with  $(\mathfrak{M}^{\alpha+1}, \mathfrak{M}^\alpha) \cong (\mathfrak{N}, M)$  for all  $\alpha$ . We start with  $\mathfrak{M}^0 = \mathfrak{M}$ . If  $\mathfrak{M}^\alpha$  is constructed, we choose an isomorphism  $\mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^\alpha$  and extend it to an isomorphism  $\mathfrak{N} \rightarrow \mathfrak{M}^{\alpha+1}$  (Lemma 1.5). For a countable limit ordinal  $\lambda$ ,  $\mathfrak{M}^\lambda$  is the union of the  $\mathfrak{M}^\alpha$  ( $\alpha < \lambda$ ). So  $\mathfrak{M}^\lambda$  is isomorphic to  $\mathfrak{M}$  by Lemma 5.33 (2) and 5.33 (3).

Finally we set

$$\overline{\mathfrak{M}} = \bigcup_{\alpha < \omega_1} \mathfrak{M}^\alpha$$

$\overline{\mathfrak{M}}$  has cardinality  $\aleph_1$  while  $\varphi(\overline{\mathfrak{M}}) = \varphi(\mathfrak{M}^\alpha) = \varphi(\mathfrak{M}^0)$ . **If  $\overline{\mathfrak{M}} \models \varphi(\bar{a})$ , then there is some  $\alpha < \omega_1$  s.t.  $\bar{a} \in M^\alpha \cong M^0$ .**  $\square$

**Corollary 5.34.** *If  $T$  is categorical in an uncountable cardinality, it does not have a Vaughtian pair*

*Proof.* If  $T$  has a Vaughtian pair, then by Theorem 5.32 it has a model  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality  $\aleph_1$  s.t. for some  $\varphi(x) \in L(M)$  the set  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is countable. On the other hand, if  $T$  is categorical in an uncountable cardinal, it is  $\aleph_1$ -categorical by Corollary 5.30 and by Theorem 5.20, all models of  $T$  of cardinality  $\aleph_1$  are saturated. In particular, each formula is either satisfied by a finite number or by  $\aleph_1$  many elements, a contradiction.  $\square$

**Corollary 5.35.** *Let  $T$  be categorical in an uncountable cardinal,  $\mathfrak{M}$  a model, and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  infinite and definable over  $A \subseteq M$ . Then  $\mathfrak{M}$  is the unique prime extension of  $A \cup \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$*

*Proof.* By Corollary 5.34,  $T$  does not have a Vaughtian pair, so  $\mathfrak{M}$  is minimal over  $A \cup \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$ . If  $\mathfrak{N}$  is a prime extension  $\square$

**Definition 5.36.** We say that  $T$  **eliminates the quantifier**  $\exists^\infty x$  (**there are infinitely many**  $x$ ), if for every  $L$ -formula  $\varphi(x, \bar{y})$  there is a finite bound  $n_\varphi$  s.t. in all models  $\mathfrak{M}$  of  $T$  and for all parameters  $\bar{a} \in M$

$$\varphi(\mathfrak{M}, \bar{a})$$

is either infinite or has at most  $n_\varphi$  elements

*Remark.* This means that for all  $\varphi(x, \bar{y})$  there is a  $\psi(\bar{y})$  s.t. in all models  $\mathfrak{M}$  of  $T$  and for all  $\bar{a} \in M$

$$\mathfrak{M} \models \exists^\infty x \varphi(x, \bar{a}) \iff \mathfrak{M} \models \psi(\bar{a})$$

We denote this by

$$T \models \forall \bar{y} (\exists^\infty x \varphi(x, \bar{y}) \leftrightarrow \psi(\bar{y}))$$

*Proof.* If  $n_\varphi$  exists, we can use  $\psi(\bar{y}) = \exists^{>n_\varphi} x \varphi(x, \bar{y})$ . If conversely  $\psi(\bar{y})$  is a formula which is implied by  $\exists^\infty x \varphi(x, \bar{y})$ , a compactness argument shows that there must be a bound  $n_\varphi$  s.t.

$$T \models \exists^{>n_\varphi} x \varphi(x, \bar{y}) \rightarrow \psi(\bar{y})$$

First note that  $T$  is complete. If there is no such bound, then for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $T \not\models \exists^{>n} x \varphi(x, \bar{y}) \rightarrow \psi(\bar{y})$ , which is  $T \models \exists^{>n} x \varphi(x, \bar{y}) \wedge \neg \psi(\bar{y})$ . Thus by compactness  $T \models \exists^\infty x \varphi(x, \bar{y}) \wedge \neg \psi(\bar{y})$ , a contradiction.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.37.** A theory  $T$  without Vaughtian pair eliminates the quantifier  $\exists^\infty x$

Check Marker's Lemma 4.3.37 and Lemma 6.1.14

*Proof.* Let  $P$  be a new unary predicate and  $c_1, \dots, c_n$  new constants. Let  $T^*$  be the theory Check Marker's Lemma 6.1.14 to see the formal version of all  $L \cup \{P, c_1, \dots, c_n\}$ -structures

$$(\mathfrak{M}, N, a_1, \dots, a_n)$$

where  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a model of  $T$ ,  $N$  is the universe of a proper elementary substructure,  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  elements of  $N$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}, \bar{a}) \subseteq N$ . Suppose that the bound  $n_\varphi$  does not exist. Then, for any  $n$ , there is a model  $\mathfrak{N}$  of  $T$  and  $\bar{a} \in N$  s.t.  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N}, \bar{a})$  is finite, but has more than  $n$  elements. Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a proper elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{N}$ . Then  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}, \bar{a}) = \varphi(\mathfrak{N}, \bar{a})$  (as  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N}, \bar{a})$  is finite, we can

add formulas to ensure this) and the pair  $(\mathfrak{M}, N, \bar{a})$  is a model of  $T^*$ . This shows that the theory

$$T^* \cup \{\exists^{>n} x \varphi(x, \bar{c}) \mid n = 1, 2, \dots\}$$

is finitely satisfiable. A model of this theory gives a Vaughtian pair for  $T$ .  $\square$

*Exercise 5.5.1.* If  $T$  is totally transcendental and has a Vaughtian pair for  $\varphi(x)$ , then it has, for all uncountable  $\kappa$ , a model of cardinality  $\kappa$  with countable  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$ .

*Proof.* Marker's Theorem 4.3.41  $\square$

*Exercise 5.5.2.* Let  $T$  be a theory,  $\mathfrak{M}$  a model of  $T$  and  $\bar{a} \subseteq M$  a finite tuple of parameters. Let  $q(\bar{x})$  be the type of  $\bar{a}$  in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Then for new constants  $\bar{c}$ , the  $L(\bar{c})$ -theory

$$T(q) = \text{Th}(\mathfrak{M}, \bar{a}) = T \cup \{\varphi(\bar{c}) \mid \varphi(\bar{x}) \in q(\bar{x})\}$$

is complete. Show that  $T$  is  $\lambda$ -stable (or without Vaughtian pair etc.) iff  $T(q)$  is. For countable languages this implies that  $T$  is categorical in some uncountable cardinal iff  $T(q)$  is.

*Proof.* If  $T$  is  $\lambda$ -stable and  $\mathfrak{N}, \bar{b} \models T(q)$ , then there is an partial elementary map  $f : \bar{a} \rightarrow \bar{b}$  from  $\mathfrak{M}$  to  $\mathfrak{N}$ . By Marker's Corollary 4.1.7, we can extend  $f$  to an elementary map  $f' : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathfrak{N}'$  where  $\mathfrak{N} < \mathfrak{N}'$ .  $\square$

## 5.6 Algebraic formulas

**Definition 5.38.** Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a structure and  $A$  a subset of  $M$ . A formula  $\varphi(x) \in L(A)$  is called **algebraic** if  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is finite. An element  $a \in M$  is algebraic over  $A$  if it realizes an algebraic  $L(A)$ -formula. We call an element algebraic if it is algebraic over the empty set. The **algebraic closure** of  $A$ ,  $\text{acl}(A)$ , is the set of all elements of  $\mathfrak{M}$  algebraic over  $A$ , and  $A$  is called **algebraically closed** if it equals its algebraic closure

*Remark.* Note that the algebraic closure of  $A$  does not grow in elementary extensions of  $\mathfrak{M}$  because an  $L(A)$ -formula which defines a finite set in  $\mathfrak{M}$  defines the same set in every elementary extension. We can express there are exactly  $m$  solutions in formula.

By Theorem 2.15

$$|\text{acl}(A)| \leq \max(|T|, |A|)$$

In algebraically closed fields, an element  $a$  is algebraic over  $A$  precisely if  $a$  is algebraic (in the field-theoretical sense) over the field generated by  $A$ . This follows from quantifier elimination in ACF

We call a type  $p(x) \in S(A)$  algebraic iff  $p$  contains an algebraic formula. Any algebraic type  $p$  is isolated by an algebraic formula  $\varphi(x) \in L(A)$ , namely by any  $\varphi \in p$  having the minimal number of solutions in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . **Suppose  $\psi \in p$  is algebraic. If  $\psi$  doesn't isolate  $p$ . Then there is  $\phi \in p$  s.t.  $\phi \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})$  is a proper subset of  $\psi(\mathfrak{M})$ . This process will end since  $\psi$  is algebraic** This number is called the **degree**  $\deg(p)$  of  $p$ . As isolated types are realised in every model, the algebraic types over  $A$  are exactly of the form  $\text{tp}(a/A)$  where  $a$  is algebraic over  $A$ . The **degree** of  $a$  over  $A$   $\deg(a/A)$  is the degree of  $\text{tp}(a/A)$ .

**Lemma 5.39.** *Let  $p \in S(A)$  be non-algebraic and  $A \subseteq B$ . Then  $p$  has a non-algebraic extension  $q \in S(B)$ .*

*Proof.* The extension  $q_0(x) = p(x) \cup \{\neg\psi(x) \mid \psi(x) \text{ algebraic } L(B)\text{-formula}\}$  is finitely satisfiable. For otherwise there are  $\varphi(x) \in p(x)$  ( **$p$  is a type and is closed under conjunction**) and algebraic  $L(B)$ -formulas  $\psi_1(x), \dots, \psi_n(x)$  with

$$\mathfrak{M} \models \forall x(\varphi(x) \rightarrow \psi_1(x) \vee \dots \vee \psi_n(x))$$

But then  $\varphi(x)$  ( **$\varphi(x)$  has finitely many solutions**) and hence  $p(x)$  is algebraic. So we can take for  $q$  any type containing  $q_0$ .  $\square$

*Remark.* Since algebraic types are isolated by algebraic formulas, an easy compactness argument shows that a type  $p \in S(A)$  is algebraic iff  $p$  has only finitely many realisations (namely  $\deg(p)$  many) in all elementary extensions of  $\mathfrak{M}$ .

*Proof.*  $\Rightarrow$ . Obvious.

$\Leftarrow$ . Suppose  $p \in S(A)$  is not algebraic in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Add infinitely many constants  $C$ , for any  $\varphi \in p$ , let  $\Phi = \{\varphi(c) : c \in C\}$  and

$$\Gamma = \text{Diag}_{\text{el}}(\mathfrak{M}) \cup \{c \neq d : c, d \in C\} \cup \bigcup \{\Phi : \varphi \in p\}$$

Then  $\Gamma$  is finitely satisfied by  $\mathfrak{M}$  and we have a model where  $p$  has infinitely many realisations  $\square$

**Lemma 5.40.** *Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  be two structures and  $f : A \rightarrow B$  an elementary bijection between two subsets. Then  $f$  extends to an elementary bijection between  $\text{acl}(A)$  and  $\text{acl}(B)$*

*Proof.* Let  $g : A' \rightarrow B'$  a maximal extension of  $f$  to two subsets of  $\text{acl}(A)$  and  $\text{acl}(B)$ . Let  $a \in \text{acl}(A)$ . Since  $a$  is algebraic over  $A'$ ,  $a$  is atomic over  $A'$ . We can therefore realise the type  $g(\text{tp}(a/A'))$  in  $\mathfrak{N}$  - by an element  $b \in \text{acl}(B)$  - and obtain an extension  $g \cup \{ \langle a, b \rangle \}$  of  $g$ . It follows that  $a \in A'$ . So  $g$  is defined on the whole  $\text{acl}(A)$ . Interchanging  $A$  and  $B$  shows that  $g$  is surjective  $\square$

**Definition 5.41.** A **pregeometry** (or **matroid**)  $(X, \text{cl})$  is a set  $X$  with a closure operator  $\text{cl} : \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$  where  $\mathcal{P}$  denotes the power set, s.t. for all  $A \subseteq X$  and  $a, b \in X$

1. (REFLEXIVITY)  $A \subseteq \text{cl}(A)$
2. (FINITE CHARACTER)  $\text{cl}(A)$  is the union of all  $\text{cl}(A')$ , where the  $A'$  range over all finite subsets of  $A$
3. (TRANSITIVITY)  $\text{cl}(\text{cl}(A)) = \text{cl}(A)$
4. (EXCHANGE)  $a \in \text{cl}(Ab) \setminus \text{cl}(A) \Rightarrow b \in \text{cl}(Aa)$

A set  $A$  is called **closed** if  $A = \text{cl}(A)$ .

**Lemma 5.42.** *If  $X$  is the universe of a structure,  $\text{acl}$  satisfies REFLEXIVITY, FINITE CHARACTER and TRANSITIVITY*

## 5.7 Strongly minimal sets

We fix a complete theory  $T$  with infinite models.

**Definition 5.43.** Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a model of  $T$  and  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  a non-algebraic  $L(M)$ -formula

1. The set  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is called **minimal in  $\mathfrak{M}$**  if for all  $L(M)$ -formulas  $\psi(\bar{x})$  the intersection  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})$  is either finite or cofinite in  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$
2. The formula  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  is **strongly minimal** if  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  defines a minimal set in all elementary extensions of  $\mathfrak{M}$ . In this case, we also call the definable set  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  strongly minimal. A non-algebraic type containing a strongly minimal formula is called strongly minimal
3. A theory  $T$  is strongly minimal if the formula  $x \doteq x$  is strongly minimal

Strong minimality is preserved under definable bijections; i.e., if  $A$  and  $B$  are definable subsets of  $\mathfrak{M}^k, \mathfrak{M}^m$  defined by  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$ , respectively, s.t. there is a definable bijection between  $A$  and  $B$ , then if  $\varphi$  is strongly minimal so is  $\psi$ . **Suppose bijection  $f(\bar{a}) = \bar{b}$  iff  $\gamma(\bar{a}, \bar{b})$ . Then for any  $\theta(\bar{x})$ , we have  $\theta'(\bar{y}) = \exists \bar{x}(\theta(\bar{x}) \wedge \gamma(\bar{x}, \bar{y}))$**

**Example 5.2.** 1. The following theories are strongly minimal, which is easily seen in each case using quantifier elimination

- Infset. The sets which are definable over a parameter set  $A$  in a model  $M$  are the finite subsets  $S$  of  $A$  and their complements  $M \setminus S$
- For a field  $K$ , the theory of infinite  $K$ -vector spaces. The sets definable over a set  $A$  are the finite subsets of the subspace spanned by  $A$  and their complements  **$K$  is divided by the subspace spanned by  $A$  and its complement.**
- The theories  $\text{ACF}_p$ . The definable sets of any model  $K$  are Boolean combinations of zero-sets

$$\{a \in K \mid f(a) = 0\}$$

of polynomials  $f(X) \in K[X]$ . Zero-sets are finite, or if  $f = 0$ , all of  $K$ .  **$f(x) \neq 0$  is cofinite.**

2. If  $K \models \text{ACF}_p$ , for any  $a, b \in K$ , the formula  $ax_1 + b = x_2$  defining an affine line  $A$  in  $K^2$  is strongly minimal as there is a definable bijection between  $A$  and  $K$ . **The formula defines a map**
3. For any strongly minimal formula  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , the **induced theory**  $T \upharpoonright \varphi$  is strongly minimal. Here, for any  $\mathfrak{M} \models T$ , the induced theory is the theory of  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  with the structure given by all intersections of 0-definable subsets of  $M^{nm}$  with  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})^m$  for all  $m \in \omega$ . This theory depends only on  $T$  and  $\varphi$ , not on  $\mathfrak{M}$ .

Whether  $p_\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$  is strongly minimal depends only on the type of the parameter tuple  $\bar{a}$  and not on the actual model: observe that  $\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$  is strongly minimal iff for all  $L$ -formulas  $\psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})$  the set

$$\Sigma_\psi(\bar{z}, \bar{a}) = \{\exists^{>k} \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \wedge \psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})) \wedge \exists^{>k} \bar{x}(\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \wedge \neg \psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})) \mid k = 1, 2, \dots\}$$

cannot be realised in any elementary extension. This means that for all  $\psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})$  there is a bound  $k_\psi$  s.t.

$$\mathfrak{M} \models \forall \bar{z} (\exists^{\leq k_\psi} \bar{x} (\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \wedge \psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})) \vee \exists^{\leq k_\psi} (\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \wedge \neg \psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})))$$

This is an **elementary property** of  $\bar{a}$ , i.e., expressible by a first-order formula. So it makes sense to call  $\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$  a strongly minimal formula without specifying a model

Note that in our definition,  $\varphi(\bar{x})$  a non-algebraic  $L(M)$ -formula. Thus from our definition,  $\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \in L(A)$  is strongly minimal as long as it has such elementary which is required for all elementary extensions of  $\mathfrak{A}$ . Guess this is the BASE model of all elementary extensions.

One consequence is, we only need to say  $|\varphi(\mathfrak{C})| > k_\varphi$  to say  $|\varphi(\mathfrak{C})|$  is infinite. Just like we eliminate the  $\exists^\infty$

**Lemma 5.44.** *If  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated, or if  $T$  eliminates the quantifier  $\exists^\infty$ , any minimal formula is strongly minimal. If  $T$  is totally transcendental, every infinite definable subset of  $\mathfrak{M}^n$  contains a minimal set  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$ .*

*Proof.* If  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated and  $\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$  not strongly minimal, then for some  $L$ -formula  $\psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})$  the set  $\Sigma_\psi(\bar{z}, \bar{a})$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ , so  $\varphi$  is not minimal.

If on the other hand  $\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$  is minimal and  $T$  eliminates the quantifier  $\exists^\infty$ , then for all  $L$ -formulas  $\psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})$

$$\neg(\exists^\infty \bar{x} (\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \wedge \psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})) \wedge \exists^\infty \bar{x} (\varphi(\bar{x}, \bar{a}) \wedge \neg \psi(\bar{x}, \bar{z})))$$

is an elementary property of  $\bar{z}$ . If we can eliminate  $\exists^\infty$ , then we can express minimality by a first-order sentence. Thus it's strongly minimal. Guess the power of infinitary disjunction ☺

If  $\varphi_0(\mathfrak{M})$  does not contain a minimal set, one can construct from  $\varphi_0(\bar{x})$  a binary tree of  $L(M)$ -formulas defining infinite subsets of  $\mathfrak{M}$ . As  $\varphi_0(\mathfrak{M})$  does not contain a minimal set, its not minimal?

If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is not minimal, then there is an  $L(M)$ -formula  $\psi(\bar{x})$  and both  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \neg \psi(\mathfrak{M})$  are infinite and not minimal. Thus we can construct a binary tree from this.  $\square$

From now on we will only consider strongly minimal formulas in one variable.

**Lemma 5.45.** *The formula  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is minimal iff there is a unique non-algebraic type  $p \in S(M)$  containing  $\varphi(x)$*

*Proof.* If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is minimal, then clearly

$$p = \{\psi \mid \psi(x) \in L(M) \text{ s.t. } \varphi \wedge \neg\psi \text{ is algebraic}\}$$

is the unique non-algebraic type in  $S(M)$  containing it.  $\varphi(x)$  is minimal iff for any  $\psi(x) \in L(M)$ ,  $\varphi \wedge \psi$  or  $\varphi \wedge \neg\psi$  is algebraic.. Guess algebraic requires  $|\varphi(\mathfrak{M})| > 0$ .

if there is another non-algebraic type  $q \in S(M)$  and we take  $\gamma(x) \in q \setminus p$ . Then  $\gamma \wedge \varphi \in q$  and hence  $\varphi \wedge \neg\gamma$  is algebraic. Thus  $\gamma \in p$

If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is not minimal, there is some  $L$ -formula  $\psi$  with both  $\varphi \wedge \psi$  and  $\varphi \wedge \neg\psi$  non-algebraic. By Lemma 5.39, there are at least two non-algebraic types in  $S(M)$  containing  $\varphi$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 5.46.** *A strongly minimal type  $p \in S(A)$  has a unique non-algebraic extension to all supersets  $B$  of  $A$  in an elementary extensions of  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Consequently, the type of  $m$  realisations  $a_1, \dots, a_m$  of  $p$  with  $a_i \notin \text{acl}(a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}A)$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, m$  is uniquely determined.*

*Proof.* Existence of non-algebraic extensions follows from Lemma 5.39, which also allows us to assume that  $B$  is a model.

Uniqueness follows from Lemma 5.45 applied to any strongly minimal formula of  $p$ . The last sentence follows by induction.

See Marker's Lemma 6.1.6. Thus  $p$  is strongly minimal in the problem.

First we need to prove that for any  $a, b \notin \text{acl}(A)$ ,  $\text{tp}(a/A) = \text{tp}(b/A)$ . As  $p$  is strongly minimal, there is a strongly minimal formula  $\phi(x) \in p(x)$ . For any  $\mathfrak{M} \models \psi(a)$ , as  $\phi(a) \wedge \psi(a)$ ,  $\phi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})$  is infinite, and thus  $\phi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \neg\psi(\mathfrak{M})$  is finite. As  $\mathfrak{M} \models \phi(b)$ , we have  $b \notin \phi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \neg\psi(\mathfrak{M})$  and hence  $\mathfrak{M} \models \phi(b) \wedge \psi(b)$ . Consequently,  $\text{tp}(a/A) = \text{tp}(b/A)$ .

Inductive step is similar

$\square$

**Theorem 5.47.** *If  $\varphi(x)$  is strongly minimal formula in  $\mathfrak{M}$  without parameters, the operation*

$$cl : \mathfrak{P}(\varphi(\mathfrak{M})) \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}(\varphi(\mathfrak{M}))$$

*defined by*

$$cl(A) = \text{acl}^M(A) \cap \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$$

*is a pregeometry  $(\varphi(\mathfrak{M}), cl)$*

*Proof.* We have to verify EXCHANGE. Prove  $a \in cl(Ab) \setminus cl(A) \Rightarrow b \in cl(Aa)$ .

For notational simplicity we assume  $A = \emptyset$ . Now we prove  $a \in cl(b) \setminus cl(\emptyset) \Rightarrow b \in cl(a)$ . Let  $a \in \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  be not algebraic over  $\emptyset$  and  $b \in \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  not



algebraic over  $a$ . **(Prove by contradiction)** By Corollary 5.46, all such pairs  $a, b$  have the same type  $p(x, y)$ . Let  $A'$  be an infinite set of non-algebraic elements realising  $\varphi$  (which exists in an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{M}$ )  **$a$  is non-algebraic that realising  $\varphi$  iff for any  $\psi$  that cofinite in  $\varphi$ ,  $a \in \bigcap \varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})$ .**

If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{M})$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \wedge \theta(\mathfrak{M})$  are infinite, then either  $(\varphi \wedge \psi \wedge \theta)(\mathfrak{M})$  is infinite or  $(\varphi \wedge \neg(\psi \wedge \theta))(\mathfrak{M})$  is infinite. But  $\varphi \wedge \neg(\psi \wedge \theta) = (\varphi \wedge \neg\psi) \vee (\varphi \wedge \neg\theta)$ , thus it's finite and  $(\varphi \wedge \psi \wedge \theta)(\mathfrak{M})$  is infinite. Hence  $\{\varphi\} \cup \{\psi : (\varphi \wedge \psi)(\mathfrak{M}) \text{ infinite}\}$  is finitely satisfiable and thus satisfiable.

Then we just add constants satisfying these formulas. This is an elementary extension by Tarski test. and  $b'$  non-algebraic over  $A'$ .  **$\varphi$  is strongly minimal and we can view  $A'$  as some extensions** Since all  $a' \in A'$  have the same type  $p(x, b')$  over  $b'$ , no  $a'$  is algebraic over  $b'$ .  **$a'$  is algebraic over  $b'$  iff there is  $\mathfrak{M} \models \varphi(a', b')$  s.t.  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}, b')$  is finite. But for all  $a', a'' \in A'$ ,  $\text{tp}(a', b') = \text{tp}(a'', b')$ . Thus  $|\varphi(\mathfrak{M}, b')| \geq |A'|$ . Thus also  $a$  is not algebraic over  $b$ .  $\square$**

The same proof shows that algebraic closure defines a pregeometry on the set of realizations of a *minimal* type, i.e., a non-algebraic type  $p \in S_1(A)$  having a unique non-algebraic extension to all supersets  $B$  of  $A$  in elementary extensions of  $\mathfrak{M}$ . Here is an example to show that a minimal type need not be strongly minimal

Let  $T$  be the theory of  $\mathfrak{M} = (M, P_i)_{i < \omega}$  in which the  $P_i$  form a proper descending sequence of subsets. The type  $p = \{x \in P_i \mid i < \omega\} \in S_1(\emptyset)$  is minimal. If all  $P_{i+1}$  are cofinite in  $P_i$ , then  $p$  does not contain a minimal formula and is not strongly minimal

In pregeometries there is a natural notion of independence and dimension, so in light of Theorem 5.47, we may define the following

If  $\varphi(x)$  is strongly minimal without parameters, the  **$\varphi$ -dimension** of a model  $\mathfrak{M}$  of  $T$  is the dimension of the pregeometry  $(\varphi(\mathfrak{M}), \text{cl})$

$$\dim_{\varphi}(\mathfrak{M})$$

If  $\mathfrak{M}$  is the model of a strongly minimal theory, we just write  $\dim(\mathfrak{M})$

If  $\varphi(x)$  is defined over  $A_0 \subseteq M$ , the closure operator of the pregeometry  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}_{A_0})$  is given by

$$\text{cl}(A) = \text{acl}^M(A_0 \cup A) \cap \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$$

and

$$\dim_{\varphi}(\mathfrak{M}/A_0) := \dim_{\varphi}(\mathfrak{M}_{A_0})$$

is called the  $\varphi$ -dimension of  $\mathfrak{M}$  over  $A_0$ .

**Lemma 5.48.** *Let  $\varphi(x)$  be defined over  $A_0$  and strongly minimal, and let  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  be models containing  $A_0$ . Then there exists an  $A_0$ -elementary map between  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$  iff  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $\mathfrak{N}$  have the same  $\varphi$ -dimension over  $A_0$*

*Proof.* An  $A_0$ -elementary map between  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$  maps bases to bases, so one direction is clear

For the other direction we use Corollary 5.46: if  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$  have the same dimension over  $A_0$ , let  $U$  and  $V$  be bases of  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  and  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$ , respectively, and let  $f : U \rightarrow V$  be a bijection. By Corollary 5.46,  $f$  is  $A_0$ -elementary **The are indiscernibles.** and by Lemma 5.40  $f$  extends to an elementary bijection  $g : \text{acl}(A_0 U) \rightarrow \text{acl}(A_0 V)$ . Thus  $g \upharpoonright \varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is an  $A_0$ -elementary map from  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  to  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$   $\square$

**Corollary 5.49.** 1. *A theory  $T$  is strongly minimal iff over every parameter set there is exactly one non-algebraic type*

2. *In models of a strongly minimal theory the algebraic closure defines a pregeometry*
3. *Bijections between independent subsets of models of a strongly minimal theory are elementary. In particular, the type of  $n$  independent elements is uniquely determined*

*Proof.* 1. Lemma 5.45

2. From Theorem 5.47

$\square$

If  $T$  is strongly minimal, by the preceding we have

$$|S(A)| \leq |\text{acl}(A)| + 1$$

**1 is for the unique non-algebraic type.** Every algebraic type  $p$  is isolated by  $\varphi_p(x)$ . Also  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}) \subseteq \text{acl}(A)$ . For different  $\varphi_p$  and  $\varphi_q$ ,  $\varphi_p(\mathfrak{M}) \neq \varphi_q(\mathfrak{M})$ . **So different algebraic  $p$  is at least realized by one unique element.** Strongly minimal theories are therefore  $\lambda$ -stable for all  $\lambda \geq |T|$  **as  $|\text{acl}(A)| \leq \max(|T|, |A|)$ .**

Also there can be no binary tree of finite or cofinite sets. So by the remark after the proof of Theorem 5.15  $T$  is totally transcendental **as we restrict  $\varphi$  to one variable.** . If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is cofinite and  $\mathfrak{N}$  a proper elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{M}$ , then  $\varphi(\mathfrak{N})$  is a proper extension of  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  **as  $|\mathfrak{M} - \varphi(\mathfrak{M})|$  is fixed.** Thus strongly minimal theories have no Vaughtian pairs.

**Theorem 5.50.** *Let  $T$  be strongly minimal. Models of  $T$  are uniquely determined by their dimensions. The set of possible dimensions is an end segment of the cardinals. A model  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated iff  $\dim(\mathfrak{M}) \geq \aleph_0$ . All models are  $\omega$ -homogeneous*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}_0, \mathfrak{M}_1$  be models of the same dimension, and let  $B_0, B_1$  be bases for  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_1$ , respectively. Then any bijection  $f : B_0 \rightarrow B_1$  is an elementary map by Corollary 5.49, which extends to an isomorphism of the algebraic closure  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  by Lemma 5.40

**Claim.** Every infinite algebraically closed subset  $S$  of  $M$  is the universe of an elementary substructure

*Proof.* By Theorem 2.2 it suffices to show that every consistent  $L(S)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  can be realised in  $S$ . If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is finite, all realisations are algebraic over  $S$  and belong to  $S$ . If  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is cofinite,  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  meets all infinite sets.

Let  $A$  be a finite subset of  $\mathfrak{M}$  and  $p$  the non-algebraic type in  $S(A)$ . **Suppose there are i guess. Since all algebraic types are isolated.** Thus  $p$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$  exactly if  $M \neq \text{acl}(A)$ . **Note that for any  $\varphi \in p$ ,  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M})$  is cofinite. If  $p$  is not realised, then  $\bigcup_{\varphi \in p} (\neg\varphi)(\mathfrak{M}) = \mathfrak{M}$  and every element of  $\mathfrak{M}$  is algebraic over  $A$ .** i.e., iff  $\dim(\mathfrak{M}) > \dim(A)$ . Since all algebraic types over  $A$  are always realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ , this shows that  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\omega$ -saturated iff  $\mathfrak{M}$  has infinite dimension.

Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  be an elementary bijection between two finite subsets of  $M$ . By Lemma 5.40,  $f$  extends to an elementary bijection between  $\text{acl}(A)$  and  $\text{acl}(B)$ . If  $a \in M \setminus \text{acl}(A)$ , then  $p = \text{tp}(a/A)$  is the unique **Corollary 5.46** non-algebraic type over  $A$  and  $f(p)$  is the unique non-algebraic type over  $B$ . Since  $\dim(A) = \dim(B)$ , the argument in the previous paragraph shows that  $f(p)$  is realised in  $\mathfrak{M}$ . **As  $M \setminus \text{acl}(A) \neq \emptyset$ ,  $\dim(\mathfrak{M}) > \dim(A)$**   $\square$

**Corollary 5.51.** *If  $T$  is countable and strongly minimal, it is categorical in all uncountable cardinalities*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_2$  be two models of cardinality  $\kappa > \aleph_0$ . Choose two bases  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  of  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_2$  respectively. Then  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  both have cardinality  $\kappa$  as  $|\text{acl}(A)| \leq \max(|T|, |A|)$ . Then any bijection  $f : B_1 \rightarrow B_2$  is an elementary map by Corollary 5.49, which extends to an isomorphism of the algebraic closures  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  by Lemma 5.40  $\square$

**Exercise 5.7.1.** If  $\mathfrak{M}$  is minimal and  $\omega$ -saturated, then  $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{M})$  is strongly minimal

## 5.8 The Baldwin-Lachlan Theorem

**Theorem 5.52** (Baldwin-Lachlan). *Let  $\kappa$  be an uncountable cardinal. A countable theory  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical iff  $T$  is  $\omega$ -stable and has no Vaughtian pairs*

*Proof.* If  $T$  is categorical in some uncountable cardinal, then  $T$  is  $\omega$ -stable by Theorem 5.13 and has no Vaughtian pair by Corollary 5.34.

For the other direction we first obtain a strongly minimal formula: since  $T$  is totally transcendental, it has a prime model  $\mathfrak{M}_0$ . (This follows from Theorems 4.29 and 4.31 or from Theorem 5.23) Let  $\varphi(x)$  be a minimal formula in  $L(M_0)$ , which exists by Lemma 5.44. Since  $T$  has no Vaughtian pairs,  $\exists^\infty$  can be eliminated by Lemma 5.37 and hence  $\varphi(x)$  is strongly minimal by Lemma 5.44.

Let  $\mathfrak{M}_1, \mathfrak{M}_2$  be models of cardinality  $\kappa$ . We may assume that  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  is an elementary submodel of both  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_2$  as  $\mathfrak{M}_0$  is prime. Since  $T$  has no Vaughtian pair,  $\mathfrak{M}_i$  is a minimal extension of  $M_0 \cup \varphi(\mathfrak{M}_i)$ ,  $i = 1, 2$ . Therefore  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}_i)$  has cardinality  $\kappa$   $M_0$  is prime model and thus is countable since  $T$ . and hence we conclude that  $\dim_\varphi(\mathfrak{M}_1/M_0) = \kappa = \dim_\varphi(\mathfrak{M}_2/M_0)$ . By Lemma 5.48 there exists an  $M_0$ -equivalent map from  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}_0)$  to  $\varphi(\mathfrak{M}_1)$ , which by Lemma 5.28 extends to an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  to  $\mathfrak{M}_2$   $\square$

**Corollary 5.53.** *Let  $\kappa$  be an uncountable cardinal. Then  $T$  is  $\aleph_1$ -categorical iff  $T$  is  $\kappa$ -categorical*

**Corollary 5.54.** *Suppose  $T$  is  $\aleph_1$ -categorical,  $\mathfrak{M}_1, \mathfrak{M}_2$  are models of  $T$ ,  $a_i \in \mathfrak{M}_i$  and  $\varphi(x, a_i)$  strongly minimal,  $i = 1, 2$ , with  $\text{tp}(a_1) = \text{tp}(a_2)$ . If  $\mathfrak{M}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{M}_2$  have the same respective  $\varphi$ -dimension, then they are isomorphic*

## 6 Morley Rank

### 6.1 Saturated models and the monster

**Lemma 6.1.** *Let  $S_0 \subseteq S_1 \subseteq \dots \subseteq S_\alpha \subseteq \dots$  be an increasing chain of sets indexed by  $\alpha < \kappa$  for some regular cardinal  $\kappa$ . If  $A \subseteq \bigcup_{\alpha < \kappa} S_\alpha$  and  $|A| < \kappa$ , then  $A \subseteq S_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha < \kappa$*

*Or more generally if  $\kappa$  is not regular,  $A \subseteq \bigcup_{\alpha < \text{cf}(\kappa)} S_\alpha$  and  $|A| < \kappa$  implies that  $A \subseteq S_\alpha$*

*Proof.* Define  $f : A \rightarrow \kappa$  by  $f(x) = \min\{\alpha : x \in S_\alpha\}$ . Then  $|f(A)| \leq |A| < \text{cf}(\kappa)$ , so  $\alpha := \sup f(A) < \kappa$ . For any  $x \in A$ , we have  $f(x) \leq \alpha$  and so  $x \in S_{f(x)} \subseteq S_\alpha$ . Thus  $A \subseteq S_\alpha$   $\square$

**Definition 6.2.** A structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality  $\kappa \geq \omega$  is **special** if  $\mathfrak{M}$  is the union of an elementary chain  $\mathfrak{M}_\lambda$  where  $\lambda$  runs over all cardinals less than  $\kappa$  and each  $\mathfrak{M}_\lambda$  is  $\lambda^+$ -saturated.

$\mathfrak{M}_\lambda$  is  $\lambda^+$ -saturated implies that  $|\mathfrak{M}_\lambda| \geq \lambda$ .

We call  $(\mathfrak{M}_\lambda)$  a **specialising chain**

**Theorem 6.3.** If  $\mathfrak{M}$  is a structure and  $\kappa$  is a cardinal, there is a  $\kappa$ -saturated  $\mathfrak{N} \geq \mathfrak{M}$

*Proof.* Build an elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{M} = \mathfrak{M}_0 \leq \mathfrak{M}_1 \leq \dots \leq \mathfrak{M}_\alpha \leq \dots$$

of length  $\kappa^+$ , where

1.  $\mathfrak{M}_{\alpha+1}$  is an elementary extension of  $\mathfrak{M}_\alpha$  realizing every type in  $S_1(M_\alpha)$
2. If  $\alpha$  is a limit ordinal, then  $\mathfrak{M}_\alpha = \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} \mathfrak{M}_\beta$

Let  $\mathfrak{N} = \bigcup_{\alpha < \kappa^+} \mathfrak{M}_\alpha$ . Then  $\mathfrak{N} \geq \mathfrak{M}$ . If  $A \subseteq N$  and  $|A| < \kappa$ , then  $A \subseteq M_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha < \kappa^+$  since  $\kappa^+$  is regular! Any  $p \in S_1(A)$  extends to a  $p' \in S_1(M_\alpha)$  which is realized by  $\mathfrak{M}_{\alpha+1} \subseteq \mathfrak{N}$   $\square$

*Remark.* Saturated structures are special. If  $|\mathfrak{M}|$  is regular, the converse is true

*Proof.* From a base model, we build for each  $\lambda^+$ -saturated model  $\square$

**Lemma 6.4.** Let  $\lambda$  be an infinite cardinal  $\geq |L|$ . Then every  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality  $2^\lambda$  has a  $\lambda^+$ -saturated elementary extension of cardinality  $2^\lambda$ .

Marker's Theorem 4.3.12

*Proof.* Every set of cardinality  $2^\lambda$  has  $2^\lambda$  many subsets of cardinality at most  $\lambda$ . Equivalently to see the number of functions  $\lambda \rightarrow 2^\lambda$ , which is equal to  $|(2^\lambda)^\lambda| = 2^\lambda$ . This allows us to construct a continuous elementary chain

$$\mathfrak{M} = \mathfrak{M}_0 < \mathfrak{M}_1 < \dots < \mathfrak{M}_\alpha < \dots \quad (\alpha < \lambda^+)$$

of structures of cardinality  $2^\lambda$  s.t. all  $p \in S(A)$ , for  $A \subseteq M_\alpha$ ,  $|A| \leq \lambda$ , are realised in  $\mathfrak{M}_{\alpha+1}$ . The union of this chain has the desired properties.  $\square$

**Corollary 6.5.** Let  $\kappa > |L|$  be an uncountable cardinal. Assume that

$$\lambda < \kappa \Rightarrow 2^\lambda \leq \kappa$$

Then every infinite  $L$ -structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  of cardinality smaller than  $\kappa$  has a special extension of cardinality  $\kappa$ .

Inaccessible cardinal  $\kappa$

Let  $\alpha$  be a limit ordinal. Then for any cardinal  $\mu$ ,  $\kappa = \beth_\alpha(\mu)$  satisfies (6.5) and we have  $\text{cf}(\kappa) = \text{cf}(\alpha)$ .

**Proposition 6.6.** *Let  $\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N}$  be  $L$ -structures. Suppose  $A \subseteq A_1 \subseteq M$  and  $B \subseteq N$  and  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a partial elementary map. Suppose  $N$  is  $\kappa$ -saturated,  $|A| < \kappa$  and  $|A_1| \leq \kappa$ . Then there is a partial elementary map  $g : A_1 \rightarrow B_1$  extending  $f$*

*Proof.* Let  $A_1 = \{a_\alpha : \alpha < \lambda\}$  where  $|A_1| = \lambda$ . Then at each step,  $\text{dom}(f_\alpha) \leq |A| + |\alpha| < \lambda \leq \kappa$   $\square$

**Theorem 6.7.** *Two elementarily equivalent special structure of the same cardinality are isomorphic*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  be two elementarily equivalent special structures of cardinality  $\kappa$  with specialising chains  $(\mathfrak{A}_\lambda)$  and  $(\mathfrak{B}_\lambda)$ , respectively. The well-ordering defined in the proof of Lemma A.5 can be used to find enumerations  $(a_\alpha)_{\alpha < \kappa}$  and  $(b_\alpha)_{\alpha < \kappa}$  of  $A$  and  $B$  s.t.  $a_\alpha \in A_{|\alpha|}$  and  $b_\alpha \in B_{|\alpha|}$ . **Do we really need this enumeration** We construct an increasing sequence of elementary maps  $f^\alpha : A^\alpha \rightarrow B^\alpha$  s.t. for all  $\alpha$  which are zero or limit ordinals we have  $a_{\alpha+i} \in A^{\alpha+2i}$ ,  $b_{\alpha+1} \in B^{\alpha+2i+1}$ , and also  $|A^\alpha| \leq |\alpha|$ ,  $A^\alpha \subseteq A_{|\alpha|}$ ,  $|B^\alpha| \leq |\alpha|$ ,  $B^\alpha \subseteq B_{|\alpha|}$ . This is doable since each  $A_{|\alpha|}$  is  $|\alpha|^+$ -saturated  $\square$

**Definition 6.8.** A structure  $\mathfrak{M}$  is

- **$\kappa$ -universal** if every structure of cardinality  $< \kappa$  which is elementarily equivalent to  $\mathfrak{M}$  can be elementarily embedded into  $\mathfrak{M}$
- **$\kappa$ -homogeneous** if for every subset  $A$  of  $M$  of cardinality smaller than  $\kappa$  and for every  $a \in M$ , every elementary map  $A \rightarrow M$  can be extended to an elementary map  $A \cup \{a\} \rightarrow M$
- **strongly  $\kappa$ -homogeneous** if for every subset  $A$  of  $M$  of cardinality less than  $\kappa$ , every elementary map  $A \rightarrow M$  can be extended to an automorphism of  $\mathfrak{M}$ .

**Theorem 6.9.** *Special structures of cardinality  $\kappa$  are  $\kappa^+$ -universal and strongly  $\text{cf}(\kappa)$ -homogeneous*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a special structure of cardinality  $\kappa$ .

**Fix a specialising chain  $(\mathfrak{M}_\lambda)_{\lambda < \kappa}$ .** For any  $\mathfrak{N} \equiv \mathfrak{M}$  with  $|\mathfrak{N}| \leq \kappa$ ,  $\emptyset$  is the partial elementary map from  $N$  to  $M$ . For each  $a \in N$  and  $f_\alpha$ , we map to some  $b \in \mathfrak{M}_{|f_\alpha|}$ . Thus we get a elementary map from  $\mathfrak{N}$  to  $\mathfrak{M}$

Let  $A$  be a subset of  $M$  of cardinality less than  $\text{cf}(\kappa)$  and let  $f : A \rightarrow M$  an elementary map. Fix a specialising sequence  $(\mathfrak{M}_\lambda)$ . For  $\lambda_0$  sufficiently large,  $\mathfrak{M}_{\lambda_0}$  contains  $A$ . The sequence

$$M_\lambda^* = \begin{cases} (\mathfrak{M}_\lambda, a)_{a \in A} & \text{if } \lambda_0 \leq \lambda \\ (\mathfrak{M}_{\lambda_0}, a)_{a \in A} & \text{if } \lambda < \lambda_0 \end{cases}$$

is then a specialising sequence of  $(\mathfrak{M}, a)_{a \in A}$ . For the same reason  $(\mathfrak{M}, f(a))_{a \in A}$  is special. By Theorem 6.7 these two structures are isomorphic under an automorphism of  $\mathfrak{M}$  which extends  $f$   $\square$

Let  $T$  be a complete theory with infinite models. For convenience, we would like to work in a very large saturated structure, large enough so that any model of  $T$  can be considered as an elementary substructure. If  $T$  is totally transcendental, by Remark 5.2 we can choose such a **monster model** as a saturated model of cardinality  $\kappa$  where  $\kappa$  is a regular cardinal greater than all the models we ever consider otherwise. Using Exercise ?? this also works for stable theories and regular  $\kappa$  with  $\kappa^{|T|} = \kappa$ . For any infinite  $\lambda$ ,  $\kappa = (\lambda^{|T|})^+$  has this property.

In order to construct the **monster model**  $\mathfrak{C}$  for an arbitrary theory  $T$  we will work in BGC. This is a conservative extension of ZFC which adds classes to ZFC. Then **being a model** of  $T$  interpreted as being the union of an elementary chain of (set-size) models of  $T$ . The universe of our monster model  $\mathfrak{C}$  will be a proper class.

**Theorem 6.10 (BGC).** *There is a class-size model  $\mathfrak{C}$  of  $T$  s.t. all types over all subsets of  $C$  are realised in  $\mathfrak{C}$ . Moreover  $\mathfrak{C}$  is uniquely determined up to isomorphism*

*Proof.* Global choice allows us to construct a long continuous elementary chain  $(M_\alpha)_{\alpha \in O_n}$  of models of  $T$  s.t. all types over  $M_\alpha$  are realised in  $M_{\alpha+1}$ . Let  $\mathfrak{C}$  be the union of this chain. The uniqueness is proved as in Lemma 5.17.  $\square$

We call  $\mathfrak{C}$  the **monster model** of  $T$ . Note that Global Choice implies that  $\mathfrak{C}$  can be well-ordered.

**Corollary 6.11.**  $\bullet$   $\mathfrak{C}$  is  $\kappa$ -saturated for all cardinals  $\kappa$

- $\bullet$  Any model of  $T$  is elementarily embeddable in  $\mathfrak{C}$
- $\bullet$  Any elementary bijection between two subsets of  $\mathfrak{C}$  can be extended to an automorphism of  $\mathfrak{C}$

We say that two elements are **conjugate over** some parameter set  $A$  if there is an automorphism of  $\mathfrak{C}$  fixing  $A$  elementwise and taking one to the other. Note that  $a, b \in \mathfrak{C}$  are conjugate over  $A$  iff they have the same type over  $A$ . We call types  $p \in S(A)$ ,  $q \in S(B)$  **conjugate over**  $D$  if there is an automorphism  $f$  of  $\mathfrak{C}$  fixing  $D$  and taking  $A$  to  $B$  and s.t.  $q = \{\varphi(x, f(a)) \mid \varphi(x, a) \in p\}$ . Note that strictly speaking  $\text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C})$  is not an object in Bernays-Gödel Set Theory but we will nevertheless use this term as a way of talking about automorphisms

Readers who mistrust set theory can fix a regular cardinal  $\gamma$  bigger than the cardinality of all models and parameter sets they want to consider. For  $\mathfrak{C}$  they may then use a special model of cardinality  $\kappa = \beth_\gamma(\aleph_0)$ . This is  $\kappa^+$ -universal and strongly  $\gamma$ -homogeneous

*We will use the following convention throughout the rest of this book*

- Any **model** of  $T$  is an elementary substructure of  $\mathfrak{C}$ . We identify models with their universes and denote them by  $M, N, \dots$
- **Parameter sets**  $A, B, \dots$  are subsets of  $\mathfrak{C}$
- Formulas  $\varphi(x)$  with parameters define a **subclass**  $\mathbb{F} = \varphi(\mathfrak{C})$  of  $\mathfrak{C}$ . Two formulas are **equivalent** if they define the same class
- We write  $\models \varphi$  for  $\mathfrak{C} \models \varphi$
- A set of formulas with parameters from  $\mathfrak{C}$  is **consistent** if it is realised in  $\mathfrak{C}$
- If  $\pi(x)$  and  $\sigma(x)$  are partial types we write  $\pi \models \sigma$  for  $\pi(\mathfrak{C}) \subseteq \sigma(\mathfrak{C})$
- A **global type** is a type  $p$  over  $\mathfrak{C}$ ; we denote this by  $p \in S(\mathfrak{C})$

**Lemma 6.12.** *An elementary bijection  $f : A \rightarrow B$  extends to an elementary bijection between  $\text{acl}(A) \rightarrow \text{acl}(B)$ .*

*Proof.* Extend  $f$  to an automorphism  $f'$  of  $\mathfrak{C}$ . Clearly  $f'$  maps  $\text{acl}(A)$  to  $\text{acl}(B)$  **Strongly homogeneous**  $\square$

This implies Lemma 5.40 and the second claim in the proof of Theorem 5.48

Note that by the remark over Lemma 5.39 for any model  $M$  and any  $A \subseteq M$  the algebraic closure of  $A$  in the sense of  $M$  equals the algebraic closure in the sense of  $\mathfrak{C}$ .

**Lemma 6.13.** *Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a definable class and  $A$  a set of parameters. T.F.A.E.*



1.  $\mathbb{D}$  is definable over  $A$

2.  $\mathbb{D}$  is invariant under all automorphisms of  $\mathfrak{C}$  which fix  $A$  pointwise

*Proof.*  $\Rightarrow$  is easy as for any  $F \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$  and  $\mathbb{D} = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, \bar{a})$ ,  $\mathfrak{C} \models \varphi(\bar{s}, \bar{a})$  iff  $\mathfrak{C} \models \varphi(F(\bar{s}), \bar{a})$ . StackExchange

$$x \in \mathbb{D} \Leftrightarrow \varphi(x, \bar{a}) \Leftrightarrow \varphi(F(x), F(\bar{a})) \Leftrightarrow \varphi(F(x), \bar{a}) \Leftrightarrow F(x) \in \mathbb{D}$$

$\Leftarrow$ . Another proof from Chernikov. Assume that  $\mathbb{D} = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b)$  where  $b \in \mathfrak{C}$ , and let  $p(y) = \text{tp}(b/A)$

**Claim 1.**  $p(y) \vdash \forall x(\varphi(x, y) \leftrightarrow \varphi(x, b))$ , which says that for any realisations  $b'$ ,  $\varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b) = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b')$

Indeed, let  $b' \models p(y)$  be arbitrary. Then  $\text{tp}(b/A) = \text{tp}(b'/A)$  so there is some  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$  with  $\sigma(b) = b'$ . Then  $\sigma(X) = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b')$  and by assumption  $\sigma(X) = X$ , thus  $\varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b) = X = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b')$ .

There is some  $\psi(y) \in p$  (there is a finite subset of  $p(y)$  that does the job and we take the conjunction) s.t.

$$\psi(y) \models \forall x(\varphi(x, y) \leftrightarrow \varphi(x, b))$$

Let  $\theta(x)$  be the formula  $\exists y(\psi(y) \wedge \varphi(x, y))$ . Note that  $\theta(x)$  is an  $L(A)$ -formula, as  $\psi(y)$  is

**Claim 2.**  $X = \theta(\mathfrak{C})$

If  $a \in X$ , then  $\models \varphi(a, b)$ , and as  $\psi(y) \in \text{tp}(b/A)$  we have  $\models \theta(a)$ . Conversely, if  $\models \theta(a)$ , let  $b'$  be s.t.  $\models \psi(b') \wedge \varphi(a, b')$ . But by the choice of  $\psi$  this implies that  $\models \varphi(a, b)$

$\Leftarrow$  Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be defined by  $\varphi$ , defined over  $B \supset A$ . Consider the maps

$$\mathfrak{C} \xrightarrow{\tau} S(B) \xrightarrow{\pi} S(A)$$

where  $\tau(c) = \text{tp}(c/B)$  and  $\pi$  is the restriction map. Let  $Y$  be the image of  $\mathbb{D}$  in  $S(A)$ . Since  $Y = \pi[\varphi]$ .  $Y$  is closed. **Note that  $\tau(\mathbb{D}) = [\varphi]$ .  $\tau(\mathbb{D}) = \{\text{tp}(c/B) : \mathfrak{C} \models \varphi(c)\} \subseteq [\varphi]$ . For any  $q(x) \in [\varphi]$ , as  $\mathfrak{C}$  is saturated,  $\mathfrak{C} \models q(d)$  and  $d \in \mathbb{D}$ . Thus  $q \in \tau(\mathbb{D})$ .  $\pi$  is continuous**

Assume that  $\mathbb{D}$  is invariant under all automorphisms of  $\mathfrak{C}$  which fix  $A$  pointwise. Since elements which have the same type over  $A$  are conjugate by an automorphism of  $\mathfrak{C}$ , this means that  $\mathbb{D}$ -membership depends only on the type over  $A$ , i.e.,  $\mathbb{D} = (\pi\tau)^{-1}(Y)$ . **For any  $\text{tp}(c/A) = \text{tp}(d/A)$  and  $c \in \mathbb{D}$ , as  $c$  and  $d$  are conjugate,  $d \in \mathbb{D}$ .**

**For any  $c \notin \mathbb{D}$ ,  $\pi\tau(c) \in Y$  iff  $\text{tp}(c/A) \in \pi[\varphi]$  iff there is  $d \in \mathbb{D}$  s.t.  $\text{tp}(c/A) = \text{tp}(d/A)$  but then  $c \in \mathbb{D}$ .**

This implies that  $[\varphi] = \pi^{-1}(Y)$   $\tau(\mathbb{D}) = [\varphi] = \tau(\tau^{-1}\pi^{-1})(Y) = \pi^{-1}(Y)$ , or  $S(A) \setminus Y = \pi[\neg\varphi]$ ; hence  $S(A) \setminus Y$  is also closed and we conclude that  $Y$

is clopen. By Lemma 4.6  $Y = [\psi]$  for some  $L(A)$ -formula  $\psi$ . This  $\psi$  defines  $\mathbb{D}$ . **For any  $d \in \mathfrak{C}$**

$$\models \psi(d) \Leftrightarrow \text{tp}(d/A) \Leftrightarrow d \in \mathbb{D}$$

□

The same proof shows that the same is true for definable **relations**  $R \subseteq \mathfrak{C}^n$ ; namely,  $R$  is  $A$ -definable iff it is invariant under all  $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$

**Definition 6.14.**  $X \subseteq \mathfrak{C}^n$  is **definable almost over**  $A$  if there is an  $A$ -definable equivalence relation  $E$  on  $\mathfrak{C}^n$  with finitely many classes and  $X$  is a union of some  $E$ -classes

A slight generalization of the previous lemma

**Lemma 6.15.** *Let  $X \subseteq \mathfrak{C}^n$  be definable. TFAE*

1.  *$X$  is almost  $A$ -definable, i.e., there is an  $A$ -definable equivalence relation  $E$  on  $\mathfrak{C}^n$  with finitely many classes, s.t.  $X$  is a union of  $E$ -classes*
2. *The set  $\{\sigma(X) : \sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)\}$  is finite*
3. *The set  $\{\sigma(X) : \sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)\}$  is small*

*Proof.*  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . Let  $\varphi(x_1, x_2) \in L(A)$  be the  $A$ -definable equivalence relation  $E$ , and let  $b_1, \dots, b_n \in M$  be representatives in each equivalence class so that each class can be written as  $[b_i] = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b_i)$ . Given  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$ , since  $\varphi(x_1, x_2) \leftrightarrow \varphi(\sigma(x_1), \sigma(x_2))$ , the image of each  $[b_i]$  under  $\sigma$  will be

$$\sigma([b_i]) = \{\sigma(x) : \varphi(x, b_i)\} = \{x' : \varphi(x', \sigma(b_i))\} = \{x : \varphi(x, b_{j_i})\} = [b_{j_i}]$$

for some  $j_i \leq n$ . Now  $X$  is a disjoint union of some  $[b_i]$ 's, so  $\sigma(X)$  is a disjoint union of some  $[b_j]$ 's. Since there are only finitely many equivalence classes, there can only be finitely many possibilities for disjoint unions of these classes

$2 \rightarrow 1$ . Let  $X = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b)$  and  $p(y) = \text{tp}(b/A)$ . Given  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$ , we have  $\sigma(X) = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, \sigma(b))$ . Then from assumption, there must be distinct  $b_1, \dots, b_n$  s.t.

$$\{\sigma(X) : \sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)\} = \{\varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b_i) : i \leq n\}$$

Now if  $\text{tp}(b'/A) = \text{tp}(b/A)$ , then strong homogeneity yields some  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$  s.t.  $\sigma(b) = b'$ . Then the above argument again shows that  $\varphi(x, b')$  defines  $\sigma(X)$  for some  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$ . Thus  $\sigma(X) = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b') = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, b_i)$  for

some  $i \leq k$ . Therefore  $p(y) \vdash \bigvee_{i \leq k} \forall x (\phi(x, y) \leftrightarrow \phi(x, b_i))$ . By compactness there is some  $\psi(y) \in p$  s.t.  $\psi(y) \vdash \bigvee_{i \leq k} \forall x (\phi(x, y) \leftrightarrow \phi(x, b_i))$ . Now define  $E(x_1, x_2)$  as

$$\forall y (\psi(y) \rightarrow (\phi(x_1, y) \leftrightarrow \phi(x_2, y)))$$

so it is  $A$ -definable. It is easy to check that  $E$  is an equivalence relation with finitely many classes, and that  $X$  is a union of  $E$ -classes ( $a_1 E a_2$  iff they agree on  $\phi(x, b_i)$  for all  $i \leq k$ , and so  $X = \phi(\mathfrak{C}, b_0)$  is given by the union of all possible combinations intersected with it)

3  $\rightarrow$  1 Assume for contradiction that

$$|\{\sigma(X) : \sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)\}| = \lambda \geq \omega$$

we can find  $\lambda$ -many elements  $(b_i : i < \lambda) \subset \mathfrak{C}$  to represent the distinct images under automorphisms. Then the set

$$q(y) = p(y) \cup \{\neg \forall x (\phi(x, y) \leftrightarrow \phi(x, b_i)) : i < \lambda\}$$

will be finitely satisfiable. Thus  $q(y)$  is realised by some  $b'$ . But such  $b'$  has the same type as  $b$  over  $A$  and so strong homogeneity yields some  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$  s.t.  $\sigma(b) = b'$ . Applying such  $\sigma$  on  $X$  gives the image  $\phi(\mathfrak{C}, b') = \phi(\mathfrak{C}, b_i)$  for some  $i < \lambda$ , a contradiction  $\square$

**Definition 6.16.** The **definable closure**  $\text{dcl}(A)$  of  $A$  is the set of elements  $c$  for which there is an  $L(A)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  s.t.  $c$  is the unique element satisfying  $\varphi$ . Elements or tuples  $a$  and  $b$  are said to be **interdefinable** if  $a \in \text{dcl}(b)$  and  $b \in \text{dcl}(a)$ .

Both  $\text{acl}(A)$  and  $\text{dcl}(A)$  are preserved by  $\text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/A)$

**Corollary 6.17.** 1.  $a \in \text{dcl}(A)$  iff  $a$  has only one conjugate over  $A$ .

2.  $a \in \text{acl}(A)$  iff  $a$  has finitely many conjugates

*Proof.* 1.  $a \in \text{acl}(A)$  iff  $\{a\}$  is  $A$ -definable iff  $\{a\}$  is invariant under all automorphisms of  $\mathfrak{C}$  which fix  $A$  pointwise

2. Follows from Remark 5.6 since the realisations of  $\text{tp}(a/A)$  are exactly the conjugates of  $a$  over  $A$ .

$a \in \text{acl}(A)$  iff  $\text{tp}^{\mathfrak{C}}(a/A)$  is algebraic iff  $\text{tp}(a/A)$  has finitely many realisations

$\square$

**Example 6.1.** If  $T$  is a theory of a set, then  $a \in \text{acl}(B) = \text{dcl}(B)$  iff  $a \in B$

*Exercise 6.1.1.* Finite structures are saturated

*Proof.* Suppose  $|\mathfrak{A}| = n$  and for any  $|A| < n$ . Suppose  $p(x) \in S^{\mathfrak{A}}(A)$  is not realised, then for any  $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ , there is a  $\varphi_a \in p(x)$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi_a(a)$ . Hence  $\mathfrak{A} \models \bigwedge_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} \varphi_a(a)$ .  $\mathfrak{A}$  has a elementary extension  $\mathfrak{B}$  s.t.  $\mathfrak{B} \models p(b)$ . Then  $\mathfrak{B} \models \bigwedge_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} \varphi_a$  and hence  $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists a \bigwedge_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} \varphi_a$ . A contradiction  $\square$

*Exercise 6.1.2.*  $\text{acl}(A)$  is the intersection of all models which contain  $A$

*Proof.*  $\text{acl}(A) = \{a \in \mathfrak{C} \mid \exists \varphi \in L(A) \text{ s.t. } |\varphi(\mathfrak{C})| < \omega \wedge \mathfrak{C} \models \varphi(a)\}$ . For any models  $M$  contains  $A$ ,  $\varphi(M) = \varphi(\mathfrak{C})$  since  $M < \mathfrak{C}$ . Thus  $\text{acl}(A) \subseteq M$  for any  $M$ .

Fix any model  $M$  which contains  $A$ . If  $b$  is not algebraic over  $A$ , then  $b$  has infinitely many conjugates over  $A$ .

then  $b$  has a conjugate over  $A$  which does not belong to  $M$ . This implies that  $M$  has a conjugate  $M'$  over  $A$  which does not contain  $b$ .  $\square$

*Exercise 6.1.3* (Robinson's Joint Consistency Lemma). Extend the complete  $L$ -theory  $T$  to an  $L_1$ -theory  $T_1$  and an  $L_2$ -theory  $T_2$  s.t.  $L = L_1 \cap L_2$ . If  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are both consistent, show that  $T_1 \cup T_2$  is consistent.

*Proof.* Choose special models  $\mathfrak{A}_i$  of  $T_i$  of the same cardinality and observe that a reduct of a special model is again special  $\square$

*Exercise 6.1.4* (Beth's Interpolation Theorem). If  $\models \varphi_1 \rightarrow \varphi_2$  for  $L_i$ -sentences  $\varphi_i$ , there is an  $L = L_1 \cap L_2$ -sentence  $\theta$  s.t.  $\models \varphi_1 \rightarrow \theta$  and  $\models \theta \rightarrow \varphi_2$

*Exercise 6.1.5.* If  $M$  is  $\kappa$ -saturated, then over every set of cardinality smaller than  $\kappa$ , every type in  $\kappa$  many variables is realised in  $M$

## 6.2 Morley rank

Let  $T$  be a complete (possibly uncountable) theory

We now define the Morley rank  $\text{MR}$  for formulas  $\varphi(x)$  with **parameters in the monster model**.

$\text{MR } \varphi \geq 0$	if $\varphi$ is consistent
$\text{MR } \varphi \geq \beta + 1$	if there is an infinite family $(\varphi_i(x) \mid i < \omega)$ of formulas (in the same variable $x$ ) which imply $\varphi$ , are pairwise inconsistent and s.t. $\text{MR } \varphi_i \geq \beta$ for all $i$
$\text{MR } \varphi \geq \lambda$	(for a limit ordinal $\lambda$ ) if $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \beta$ for all $\beta < \lambda$

*Remark.*  $\varphi_i$  implies  $\varphi$  means  $\varphi_i(\mathfrak{C}) \subseteq \varphi(\mathfrak{C})$ . Thus we are finding infinite definable disjoint subsets i guess

**Definition 6.18.** To define  $\text{MR } \varphi$  we distinguish three cases

1. If there is no  $\alpha$  with  $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \alpha$ , we put  $\text{MR } \varphi = -\infty$
2.  $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \alpha$  for all  $\alpha$ , we put  $\text{MR } \varphi = \infty$
3. Otherwise, by the definition of  $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \lambda$  for limit ordinals, there is a maximal  $\alpha$  with  $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \alpha$ , and we set  $\text{MR } \varphi = \max\{\alpha \mid \text{MR } \varphi \geq \alpha\}$ .

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{MR } \varphi = -\infty &\Leftrightarrow \varphi \text{ is inconsistent} \\ \text{MR } \varphi = 0 &\Leftrightarrow \varphi \text{ is consistent and algebraic} \end{aligned}$$

If a formula has ordinal-valued Morley rank, we also say that **this formula has Morley rank**. The Morley rank  $\text{MR}(T)$  of  $T$  is the Morley rank of the formula  $x \doteq x$ . The Morley rank of a formula  $\varphi(x, a)$  only depends on  $\varphi(x, y)$  and the type of  $a$ . It follows that if a formula has Morley rank, then it is less than  $(2^{|T|})^+$ .

*Remark.* If  $\varphi$  implies  $\psi$ , then  $\text{MR } \varphi \leq \text{MR } \psi$ . If  $\varphi$  has rank  $\alpha < \infty$ , then for every  $\beta < \alpha$  there is a formula  $\psi$  which implies  $\varphi$  and has rank  $\beta$

**Example 6.2.** In Infset the formula  $x_1 \doteq a$  has Morley rank 0. **It has quantifier elimination.** If considered as a formula in two variables,  $\varphi(x_1, x_2) = x_1 \doteq a$ , it has Morley rank 1

The next lemma expresses the fact that the formulas of rank less than  $\alpha$  form an **ideal** in the Boolean algebra of equivalence classes of formulas

**Lemma 6.19.**

$$\text{MR}(\varphi \vee \psi) = \max(\text{MR } \varphi, \text{MR } \psi)$$

*Proof.* By the previous remark, we have  $\text{MR}(\varphi \vee \psi) \geq \max(\text{MR } \varphi, \text{MR } \psi)$ . For the other inequality we show by induction on  $\alpha$  that

$$\text{MR}(\varphi \vee \psi) \geq \alpha + 1 \text{ implies } \max(\text{MR } \varphi, \text{MR } \psi) \geq \alpha + 1$$

Let  $\text{MR}(\varphi \vee \psi) \geq \alpha + 1$ . Then there is an infinite family of formulas  $(\varphi_i)$  that imply  $\varphi \vee \psi$ , are pairwise inconsistent and s.t.  $\text{MR } \varphi_i \geq \alpha$ . By the induction hypothesis, for each  $i$  we have  $\text{MR}(\varphi_i \wedge \varphi) \geq \alpha$  or  $\text{MR}(\varphi_i \wedge \psi) \geq \alpha$  as  **$\text{MR}((\varphi \wedge \psi) \wedge \varphi_i) \geq \alpha$  and  $((\varphi \wedge \psi) \wedge \varphi_i)(\mathfrak{M}) = \varphi_i(\mathfrak{M})$** . If the first case holds for infinite many  $i$ , then  $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \alpha + 1$ . Otherwise  $\text{MR } \psi \geq \alpha + 1$   $\square$

We call  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$   $\alpha$ -equivalent

$$\varphi \sim_\alpha \psi$$

if their symmetric difference  $\varphi \Delta \psi$  has rank less than  $\alpha$ . Then  $\alpha$ -equivalence is an equivalence relation.  $\varphi \Delta \psi = (\varphi \wedge \neg\psi) \vee (\neg\varphi \wedge \psi) = \neg(\varphi \rightarrow \psi) \vee \neg(\psi \rightarrow \varphi) = \neg((\varphi \rightarrow \psi) \wedge (\psi \rightarrow \varphi))$

Suppose  $\varphi \sim_\alpha \psi$  and  $\psi \sim_\alpha \theta$ . Note that  $\varphi \Delta \theta = (\varphi \Delta \psi) \Delta (\psi \Delta \theta)$ . As  $\text{MR}((\varphi \Delta \psi) \vee (\psi \Delta \theta)) < \alpha$  and  $(\varphi \Delta \psi) \Delta (\psi \Delta \theta) \subset (\varphi \Delta \psi) \vee (\psi \Delta \theta)$ ,  $\text{MR}((\varphi \Delta \psi) \Delta (\psi \Delta \theta)) < \alpha$  and thus  $\text{MR}(\varphi \Delta \theta) < \alpha$ .

We call a formula  $\varphi$   $\alpha$ -strongly minimal if it has rank  $\alpha$  and for any formula  $\psi$  implying  $\varphi$  either  $\psi$  or  $\varphi \wedge \neg\psi$  has rank less than  $\alpha$ , (equivalently, if every  $\psi \subseteq \varphi$  is  $\alpha$ -equivalent to  $\emptyset$  or to  $\varphi$ ). Or, note that, under logical equivalence,  $\{\varphi \wedge \psi\} = \{\psi \text{ implying } \varphi\}$ . Thus we are actually talking about for any formula  $\psi$ , either  $\varphi \wedge \psi$  or  $\varphi \wedge \neg\psi$  has rank less than  $\alpha$ , which is natural for building a tree. In particular,  $\varphi$  is 0-strongly minimal iff  $\varphi$  is realised by a single element and  $\varphi$  is 1-strongly minimal iff  $\varphi$  is strongly minimal

**Lemma 6.20.** *Each formula  $\varphi$  of rank  $\alpha < \infty$  is equivalent to a disjunction of finitely many pairwise disjoint  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal formulas  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_d$ , the  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal components (or just components) of  $\varphi$ . The components are uniquely determined up to  $\alpha$ -equivalence*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\varphi$  is a formula of rank  $\alpha$  without such a decomposition. Then  $\varphi$  can be written as the disjoint disjunction of a formula  $\varphi_1$  of rank  $\alpha$  and another formula  $\psi_1$  of rank  $\alpha$  not having such a decomposition.  $\varphi$  is not  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal and  $\text{MR } \varphi = \alpha$  implies that there is a  $\psi$  implying  $\varphi$  s.t.  $\text{MR } \psi = \text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \neg\psi) = \alpha$ . As  $\varphi \leftrightarrow \psi \vee (\varphi \wedge \neg\psi)$ . At least one of them is not  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal. If one of them is  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal, then the other doesn't have such decomposition. If both of them is not  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal, then we can continue this process for both of them. This will end since otherwise  $\text{MR } \varphi$  will be greater than  $\alpha$ . (ANOTHER TREE!) Inductively there are formulas  $\varphi = \varphi_0, \varphi_1, \dots$  of rank  $\alpha$  and  $\psi_1, \psi_2, \dots$  so that  $\varphi_i$  is the disjoint union of  $\varphi_{i+1}$  and  $\psi_{i+1}$ . But then the rank of  $\varphi$  would be greater than  $\alpha$

Let  $\psi$  be an  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal formula implying  $\varphi$  and let  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_d$  be the  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal components. Then  $\psi$  can be decomposed into the formulas  $\psi \wedge \varphi_i$ , one of which must be  $\alpha$ -equivalent to  $\psi$ .  $\psi \Delta (\psi \wedge \varphi_i) = (\varphi \vee \neg\psi_i) \dots$  So up to  $\alpha$ -equivalence the components of  $\varphi$  are exactly the  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal formulas implying  $\varphi$   $\square$

First, note that  $\varphi$  is  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal if it's minimal over  $\mathfrak{C}$

Given any  $L(A)$ -formula  $\varphi$  and  $\text{MR } \varphi = \alpha$ , if  $\varphi$  is not  $\alpha$ -minimal over  $A$ , then it can be decomposed into disjoint  $L(A)$ -formulas  $\varphi_1$  and  $\psi_1$  with  $\text{MR } \varphi_1 = \text{MR } \psi_1 = \alpha$ . If one of them is not  $\alpha$ -minimal, then we decompose it. This process will end since otherwise  $\text{MR } \varphi > \alpha$

**Definition 6.21.** For a formula  $\varphi$  of Morley rank  $\alpha < \infty$ , the **Morley degree**  $\text{MD}(\varphi)$  is the number of its  $\alpha$ -strongly minimal components

The Morley degree is not defined for inconsistent formulas or formulas not having Morley rank. The Morley degree of a consistent algebraic formula is the number of its realisations. Strongly minimal formulas are exactly the formulas of Morley rank and Morley degree 1. As with strongly minimal formulas it is easy to see that Morley rank and degree are preserved under definable bijections

Defining  $\text{MD}_\alpha(\varphi)$  as the Morley degree for formulas  $\varphi$  of rank  $\alpha$

**Lemma 6.22.** If  $\varphi$  is the disjoint union of  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$ , then

$$\text{MD}_\alpha(\varphi) = \text{MD}_\alpha(\psi_1) + \text{MD}_\alpha(\psi_2)$$

**Theorem 6.23.** The theory  $T$  is totally transcendental iff each formula has Morley rank

*Proof.* Since there are no arbitrarily large ordinal Morley ranks, each formula  $\varphi(x)$  without Morley rank can be decomposed into two disjoint formulas without Morley rank, yielding a binary tree of consistent formulas in the free variable  $x$ . Let  $\beta = \sup\{\text{MR } \psi : \psi \text{ implies } \varphi \text{ and } \text{MR } \psi < \infty\}$ . Then as  $\text{MR } \varphi = \infty \geq \beta + 2$ , then there is an infinite family  $(\varphi_i(x) \mid i < \omega)$  of formulas which implies  $\varphi$ , are pairwise inconsistent and s.t.  $\text{MR } \varphi_i \geq \beta + 1$  for all  $i$ . Then  $\text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \neg \varphi_i) \geq \beta + 2 \geq \beta + 1$ . Hence  $\text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \varphi_i) = \text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \neg \varphi_i) = \infty$ .

Let  $(\varphi_s(x) \mid s \in {}^{<\omega}2)$  be a binary tree of consistent formulas. Then non of the  $\varphi_s$  has Morley rank. Otherwise there is a  $\varphi_s$  whose ordinal rank  $\alpha$  is minimal and (among the formulas of rank  $\alpha$ ) of minimal degree. Then both  $\varphi_{s0}$  and  $\varphi_{s1}$  have rank  $\alpha$  and therefore smaller degree than  $\varphi$ , a contradiction  $\square$

A group is said to have the **descending chain condition** (dcc) on definable subgroups, if there is no infinite properly descending chain  $H_0 \supset H_1 \supset H_2 \supset \dots$  of definable subgroups

*Remark.* A totally transcendental has the descending chain condition on definable subgroups

*Proof.* If  $H$  is a definable proper subgroup of a totally transcendental group  $G$ , then either the Morley rank or the Morley degree of  $H$  must be smaller than that of  $G$  since any coset of  $H$  has the same Morley rank and degree as  $H$ . Therefore the claim follows from the fact that the ordinals are well-ordered  $\square$

**Definition 6.24.** The **Morley rank**  $\text{MR}(p)$  of a type  $p$  is the minimal rank of any formula in  $p$ . If  $\text{MR}(p)$  is an ordinal, then its **Morley degree**  $\text{MD}(p)$  is the minimal degree of a formula of  $p$  having rank  $\alpha$ . If  $p = \text{tp}(a/A)$  we also write  $\text{MR}(a/A)$  and  $\text{MD}(a/A)$

Algebraic types have Morley rank 0 and

$$\text{MD}(p) = \deg(p)$$

Strongly minimal types are exactly the types of Morley rank and Morley degree 1.

Let  $p \in S(A)$  have Morley rank  $\alpha$  and Morley degree  $d$ . Then by definition there is some  $\varphi \in p$  of rank  $\alpha$  and degree  $d$ . Clearly,  $\varphi$  is uniquely determined up to  $\alpha$ -equivalence since for all  $\psi$  we have  $\text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \neg\psi) < \alpha$  iff  $\psi \in p$ . Thus  $p$  is uniquely determined by  $\varphi$ :

$$p = \{\psi(x) \mid \psi \in L(A), \text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \neg\psi) < \alpha\} \quad (1)$$

Obviously,  $\alpha$ -equivalent formulas determines the same type (see Lemma 5.45) **i guess here is an analogy**

Thus  $\varphi \in L(A)$  belongs to a unique type of rank  $\alpha$  iff  $\varphi$  is  $\alpha$ -**minimal** over  $A$ ; i.e., if  $\varphi$  has rank  $\alpha$  and cannot be decomposed as the union of two  $L(A)$ -formulas of rank  $\alpha$  **If  $\varphi = \psi \vee \theta$  and  $\text{MR } \varphi = \text{MR } \psi = \text{MR } \theta = \alpha$ , then  $\text{MD}(\varphi) = \text{MD}(\psi) + \text{MD}(\theta)$ .**

**Strongly minimality is on  $\mathfrak{C}$  but minimality is on  $A$**

**If  $M$  is a  $\omega$ -saturated model containing  $A$ . Then  $\text{MR}^M(\varphi) = \text{MR}^{\mathfrak{C}}(\varphi)$ .**

**Lemma 6.25.** Let  $\varphi$  be a consistent  $L(A)$ -formula

1.  $\text{MR } \varphi = \max\{\text{MR}(p) \mid \varphi \in p \in S(A)\}$
2. Let  $\text{MR } \varphi = \alpha$ . Then

$$\text{MD } \varphi = \sum (\text{MD}(p) \mid \varphi \in p \in S(A), \text{MR}(p) = \alpha)$$



*Proof.* 1. If  $\text{MR } \varphi = \infty$ , then  $\{\varphi\} \cup \{\neg\psi \mid \psi \in L(A), \text{MR } \psi < \infty\}$  is consistent. Suppose  $\{\varphi\} \cup \{\neg\psi_1, \dots, \neg\psi_n\}$  is inconsistent, then  $\models \varphi \rightarrow \neg \bigwedge \neg\psi_i$ , which is equivalent to  $\models \varphi \rightarrow \bigvee \psi_i$ . But  $\text{MR}(\bigvee \psi_i) = \max \text{MR}(\psi_i) < \infty$  and  $\text{MR}(\varphi) = \infty$ , a contradiction. Any type over  $A$  containing this set of formulas has rank  $\infty$ .

If  $\text{MR } \varphi = \alpha$ , there is a decomposition of  $\varphi$  in  $L(A)$ -formulas  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_k$ ,  $\alpha$ -minimal over  $A$ . (Note that  $k$  is bounded by  $\text{MD } \varphi$ ). By (1), the  $\varphi_i$  determine a type  $p_i$  of rank  $\alpha$ .

2. The  $p_i$  are exactly the types of rank  $\alpha$  containing  $\varphi$ . Furthermore

$$\text{MD } \varphi_i = \text{MD}(p_i)$$

□

**Corollary 6.26.** *If  $p \in S(A)$  has Morley rank and  $A \subseteq B$ , then*

$$\text{MD}(p) = \sum \{\text{MD}(q) \mid p \subseteq q \in S(B), \text{MR}(p) = \text{MR}(q)\}$$

**Corollary 6.27.** *Let  $p \in S(A)$  have Morley rank and  $A \subseteq B$ . Then  $p \in S(A)$  has at least one and at most  $\text{MD}(p)$  many extension to  $B$  of the same rank*

**Caveat:** Set-theoretically we defined the Morley rank as a function which maps each  $\alpha$  to a class of formulas. In Bernays-Gödel set theory one cannot in general define functions from ordinals to classes by a recursive scheme. The more conscientious reader should therefore use a different definition: for each set  $A$  define the relation  $\text{MR}_A(\varphi) \geq \alpha$  using only formulas with parameters from  $A$ , and put  $\text{MR } \varphi \geq \alpha$  if  $\text{MR}_A(\varphi) \geq \alpha$  for some (sufficiently large)  $A$ . The following exercise shows that if  $\varphi$  is defined over an  $\omega$ -saturated model  $M$ , we have  $\text{MR } \varphi = \text{MR}_M \varphi$ .

**Exercise 6.2.1.** Let  $\varphi$  be a formula with parameters in the  $\omega$ -saturated model  $M$ . If  $\text{MR } \varphi > \alpha$ , show that there is an infinite family of formulas **with parameters in  $M$**  which each imply  $\varphi$ , are pairwise inconsistent and have Morley rank  $\geq \alpha$ .

*Proof.* From Marker's Lemma 6.2.2

There are an infinite family  $(\psi_i(\bar{x}, \bar{c}_i) \mid i \in \omega)$ , each of which implies  $\varphi$  and are pairwise inconsistent. Let  $\bar{a}$  be the elements of  $M$  occurring in  $\varphi$ . As  $M$  is  $\omega$ -saturated and each  $\bar{c}_i$  is finite, for each  $m \in \omega$  we have

$$\text{tp}^{\mathcal{C}}(\bar{a}, \bar{c}_1, \dots, \bar{c}_m) = \text{tp}^M(\bar{a}, \bar{d}_1, \dots, \bar{d}_m) = \text{tp}^{\mathcal{C}}(\bar{a}, \bar{d}_1, \dots, \bar{d}_m)$$

for  $\bar{d}_i \in M$ .

**Claim** If  $\text{tp}^{\mathfrak{C}}(\bar{a}) = \text{tp}^{\mathfrak{C}}(\bar{b})$ , then  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{a})) = \text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{b}))$  for any  $\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$

We prove that  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{a})) \geq \alpha$  iff  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{b})) \geq \alpha$

If  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{a})) = -\infty$ , then  $\models \neg \exists \bar{x} \theta(\bar{x}, \bar{a})$  and so  $\models \neg \exists \bar{x} \theta(\bar{x}, \bar{b})$ . So  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{b})) = -\infty$ . And vice versa. So  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{a})) \geq 0$  iff  $\text{MR}(\theta(\bar{x}, \bar{b})) \geq 0$ .

If  $\alpha = \beta + 1$ . We have  $\psi_1(\bar{x}, \bar{c}_1), \psi_2(\bar{x}, \bar{c}_2), \dots$ . As  $\mathfrak{C}$  is saturated, for each  $m \in \omega$ , we have

$$\text{tp}(\bar{a}, \bar{c}_1, \dots, \bar{c}_m) = \text{tp}(\bar{b}, \bar{d}_1, \dots, \bar{d}_m)$$

Then  $\psi_1(\bar{x}, \bar{d}_1), \psi_2(\bar{x}, \bar{d}_2), \dots$  is what we want

Hence  $\text{MR}(\psi_i(\bar{v}, \bar{d}_i)) = \text{MR}(\psi_i(\bar{v}, \bar{c}_i)) \geq \alpha$  and we are done.  $\square$

*Exercise 6.2.2.* Let  $\varphi$  be a formula of Morley rank  $\alpha < \infty$  and  $\psi_0, \psi_1, \dots$  an infinite sequence of formulas. Assume that there is a number  $k$  s.t. the conjunction any  $k$  of the  $\psi_i$  has Morley rank smaller than  $\alpha$ . Then  $\text{MR}(\varphi \wedge \psi_i) < \alpha$  for almost all  $i$

*Proof.* Note that  $\models \varphi \leftrightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^n \varphi_i$ . If we have an upper bound for the size of each  $[\varphi_i]_{\sim_\alpha}$ , then the number of formulas of Morley rank  $\alpha$  is finite.

$\varphi \wedge \psi_0, \varphi \wedge \psi_1, \dots$  is just a infinite sequence of formulas implying  $\varphi$ . We can consider  $\theta_0, \theta_1, \dots$  for simplicity.

**Claim** If  $\text{MR} \theta_i = \text{MR} \theta_j = \alpha$  and  $\text{MR}(\theta_i \triangle \theta_j) < \alpha$ , then  $\text{MR}(\theta_i \wedge \theta_j) = \alpha$ .

Or more generally, if  $\varphi = \varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1$  and  $\varphi_0$  and  $\varphi_1$  are inconsistent. If  $\text{MR} \varphi = \alpha$  and  $\text{MR} \varphi_i < \alpha$ , then  $\text{MR} \varphi_{1-i} = \alpha$ .

**Claim** If  $\theta_1 \sim_\alpha \theta_2$  and  $\theta_1 \wedge \theta_2$  consistent, then  $\theta_1 \wedge \theta_2 \sim_\alpha \theta_1$ .

Hence if  $\theta_1 \sim_\alpha \theta_2 \sim_\alpha \theta_3$ , then  $\text{MR}(\theta_1 \wedge \theta_2) = \alpha$  and  $\text{MR}(\theta_1 \wedge \theta_2 \wedge \theta_3) = \alpha$

Let  $I$  be set of all  $i$  for which  $\theta_i$  has rank  $\alpha$ . If there is a  $k$ -elements subsets  $A$  of  $I$  whose elements are all  $\alpha$ -equivalent. Then for any  $i, j \in A$ ,  $\text{MR}(\theta_i \wedge \theta_j) = \alpha$ . Then  $\text{MR}(\bigwedge_{i \in A} \theta_i) = \alpha$ , a contradiction. Thus we get an upper bound

So  $|I| \leq (k-1) \text{MD } \varphi$ .  $\square$

*Exercise 6.2.3.* If  $T$  is totally transcendental, then all types over  $\omega$ -saturated models have Morley degree 1

*Proof.* Let  $M$  be an  $\omega$ -saturated model and let  $p$  be a type over  $M$  of Morley rank  $\alpha$  and degree  $n$ , witnessed by  $\varphi(x, \bar{m}) \in p$ . If  $n > 1$ , there is a formula  $\psi(x, \bar{b})$  s.t.  $\varphi(x, \bar{m}) \wedge \psi(x, \bar{b})$  and  $\varphi(x, \bar{m}) \wedge \neg \psi(x, \bar{b})$  both have Morley rank  $\alpha$ . Choose  $\bar{a} \in M$  with  $\text{tp}(\bar{a}/\bar{m}) = \text{tp}(\bar{b}/\bar{m})$ . Then both formulas  $\varphi(x, \bar{m}) \wedge \psi(x, \bar{a})$  and  $\varphi(x, \bar{m}) \wedge \neg \psi(x, \bar{a})$  have rank  $\alpha$  and degree less than  $d$ , a contradiction  $\square$

*Exercise 6.2.4.* If  $p$  is a type over  $\text{acl}(A)$ , then  $p$  and  $p \upharpoonright A$  have the same Morley rank

*Proof.* Let  $a$  be in  $\text{acl}(A)$  and  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  the conjugates of  $a$  over  $A$ . Then  $\varphi(x, a)$  and  $\varphi(x, a_1) \vee \dots \vee \varphi(x, a_n)$  have the same Morley rank

Let  $a$  be in  $\text{acl}(A)$ , then there is an  $L(A)$ -formula  $\varphi(x)$  s.t.  $\models \varphi(a)$  and let  $\psi(x)$  asserts that  $|\varphi(\mathfrak{C})| = s$ . Then  $\psi(x) \in \text{tp}(a/A)$  and hence there are only finitely many conjugates of  $a$  over  $A$ .

Let  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  be the conjugates of  $a$  over  $A$ . If  $\text{MR}(\varphi(x, a)) \geq 0$  and  $\bigwedge \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, a_i) = \emptyset$ , then, assume that  $\models \forall x \varphi(x, a_i) \wedge \neg \varphi(x, a_j)$ . Thus  $\models \exists y \forall x (\varphi(x, y) \wedge \neg \varphi(x, a_j))$  and  $\exists y \forall z (\varphi(z, y) \wedge \neg \varphi(z, x)) \in \text{tp}(a_i/A) = \text{tp}(a_j/A)$ . But  $\exists z \varphi(z, x) \in \text{tp}(a_j/A)$ , a contradiction. Thus  $\bigwedge \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, a_i) \neq \emptyset$  and  $\text{MR}(\bigwedge \varphi(x, a_i)) \geq 0$ .

Now suppose  $\text{MR}(\varphi(x, a)) \geq \alpha + 1$  and  $\text{MR}(\bigwedge \varphi(x, a_i)) \geq \alpha$ .  $\square$

### 6.3 Countable models of $\aleph_1$ -categorical theories

Fix a countable  $\aleph_1$ -categorical theory  $T$ . For models  $M < N$  of  $T$  and  $\varphi(x) \in L(M)$  a strongly minimal formula, we write  $\dim_\varphi(N/M)$  for the  $\varphi$ -dimension of  $N$  over  $M$

**Theorem 6.28.** Let  $T$  be a countable  $\aleph_1$ -categorical theory,  $M < N$  be models of  $T$ ,  $A \subseteq M$  and  $\varphi(x) \in L(A)$  a strongly minimal formula.

1. If  $b_1, \dots, b_n \in \varphi(N)$  are independent over  $M$  and  $N$  is prime over  $M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$ , then

$$\dim_\varphi(N/M) = n$$

2.  $\dim_\varphi(N) = \dim_\varphi(M) + \dim_\varphi(N/M)$

*Proof.* For ease of notation we assume  $A = \emptyset$

1. Let  $c \in \varphi(N)$ . We want to show that  $c$  is algebraic over  $M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$ . Assume the contrary. Then  $p(x) = \text{tp}(c/M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\})$  is strongly minimal  **$\text{tp}(c/M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\})$  is not algebraic and contains strongly minimal  $\varphi$**  and is axiomatised by

$$\{\varphi(x)\} \cup \{\neg \varphi_i(x) \mid i \in I\}$$

where the  $\varphi_i$  range over all algebraic formulas defined over  $M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$ . Since  $\varphi(M)$  is infinite, any finite subset of  $p(x)$  is realised by an element of  $M$ . **Since  $p(x)$  is axiomatised by  $\{\varphi(x)\} \cup \{\neg \varphi_i(x) \mid i \in I\}$ . And every disjunction of finite subset of algebraic formulas has**

only finitely many realisations. Thus  $p(x)$  is not isolated. Suppose that  $p(x)$  is isolated by  $\psi(x)$ . Then we have  $\models \forall x(\psi(x) \rightarrow \neg \varphi_i(x))$  and  $\forall x(\varphi_i(x) \rightarrow \psi(x))$ . Thus  $\neg \psi(\mathfrak{C}) \supseteq \bigcup \varphi_i(\mathfrak{C}) = \text{acl}(M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\})$  and so  $\psi(\mathfrak{C})$  is finite, a contradiction. But all elements of the prime extension  $N$  are atomic over  $M \cup \{b_1, \dots, b_n\}$  by Corollary 5.27.

2. This follows from Remark C.7 if we can show that a basis of  $\varphi(N)$  over  $\varphi(M)$  is also a basis of  $\varphi(N)$  over  $M$ . So the proof is complete once we have established the following lemma

□

**Lemma 6.29.** *Let  $T$  be  $\omega$ -stable,  $M < N$  models of  $T$ ,  $\varphi(x)$  be strongly minimal and  $b_i \in \varphi(N)$ . If the  $b_i$  are independent over  $\varphi(M)$ , they are independent over  $M$*

1#+BEGIN<sub>proof</sub> Assume that  $b_1, \dots, b_n$  are algebraically independent over  $\varphi(M)$  but dependent over  $a \in M$ . Put  $\bar{b} = b_1, \dots, b_n$ . An argument as in the proof of Theorem 5.32 shows that we may assume that  $M$  is  $\omega$ -saturated. assume  $M$  has a  $\omega$ -saturated elementary extension  $M'$ . We want to show that we doesn't change the result.

If  $\bar{b}'$  are algebraically independent over  $\varphi(M') \supseteq \varphi(M)$ , then  $\text{tp}(\bar{b}/\varphi(M)) = \text{tp}(\bar{b}'/\varphi(M'))$  by Corollary 5.46

And if we prove that  $\bar{b}'$  are algebraically independent over  $M'$ ,

Let  $p = \text{tp}(\bar{b}/M)$ . We choose a sequence  $\bar{b}^0, \bar{b}^1, \dots$  in  $\varphi(M)$  s.t.  $\bar{b}^{2i}$  is an  $n$ -tuple of elements algebraically independent over  $a\bar{b}^0, \dots, \bar{b}^{2i-1}$  and  $\bar{b}^{2i+1}$  realises  $p \upharpoonright a\bar{b}^0 \dots \bar{b}^{2i}$ . By Theorem 5.50, we always can find such  $\bar{b}^{2i}$  since

Guess 1:  $\dim(\varphi(M)) \geq \omega$

Let  $q = \text{tp}(a/B)$  where  $B = \bigcup(\bar{b}^i)$ . Since the sequence  $(\bar{b}^i)$  is indiscernible,  $\bar{b}$  is algebraically independent over  $\varphi(M)$  and hence over  $\bigcup_{i \in \omega} \bar{b}^i$  every permutation  $\pi$  of  $\omega$  defines a type  $\pi(q)$  over  $B$  of the form  $\varphi(x, \bar{b}^{\pi(0)}, \bar{b}^{\pi(1)}, \dots)$ .

If  $\{i \mid \pi(2i) \text{ even}\} \neq \{i \mid \pi'(2i) \text{ even}\}$ , we have  $\pi(q) \neq \pi'(q)$ . Suppose for all  $i, j$ ,  $f(i) < f(j)$  and  $g'(i) < g'(j)$ . Then as  $ff^{-1}(0) < ff^{-1}(1) < \dots$ ,  $gf^{-1}(0) < gf^{-1}(1) < \dots$ . But as  $g$  and  $f$  is surjective onto  $\mathbb{N}$ ,  $gf^{-1}(i) = i$  and  $ff^{-1}(i) = i$ . Thus  $f = g$ . So there are uncountably many types over  $B$  and  $T$  is not  $\omega$ -stable #+END<sub>proof</sub>

**Corollary 6.30.** *The dimension*

$$\dim(N/M) = \dim_{\varphi}(N/M)$$

*of  $N$  over  $M$  does not depend on  $\varphi$ : it is the maximal length of an elementary chain*

$$M = N_0 \preceq N_1 \preceq \dots \preceq N_n = N$$

between  $M$  and  $N$

*Proof.* Follows from the previous theorem since  $T$  has no Vaughtian pairs  $\square$

## 6.4 Computation of Morley Rank

**Lemma 6.31.** *If  $b$  is algebraic over  $aA$ , we have  $\text{MR}(b/A) \leq \text{MR}(a/A)$*

*Proof.* Let  $\text{MR}(a/A) = \alpha$ . We prove  $\text{RM}(b/A) \leq \alpha$  by induction on  $\alpha$ . Let  $d = \text{MD}(b/Aa)$ . Choose an  $L(A)$ -formula  $\varphi(x, y)$  in  $\text{tp}(ab/A)$  s.t.  $\text{MR}(\exists y \varphi(x, y)) = \alpha$  and  $|\varphi(a', \mathfrak{C})| \leq d$  for all  $a'$ .

We show that the Morley rank of  $\chi(y) = \exists x \varphi(x, y)$  is bounded by  $\alpha$ . For this consider an infinite family  $\chi_i(\mathfrak{C})$  of disjoint subclasses of  $\chi(\mathfrak{C})$  defined over some extension  $A'$  of  $A$ . Put  $\psi_i(x) = \exists y(\varphi(x, y) \wedge \chi_i(y))$ . Since any  $d + 1$  of the  $\psi_i$  has empty intersection  $\square$

## 7 Simple Theories

### 7.1 Dividing and forking

We work in a countable complete theory  $T$  with infinite models  
supplement

**Lemma 7.1** (The Standard Lemma 5.3). *Let  $A$  be a set of parameters,  $\mathcal{J}$  an infinite sequence of tuples and  $J$  a linear order. Then there is a sequence of indiscernibles over  $A$  of order type  $J$  realizing  $\text{EM}(\mathcal{J}/A)$*

Note that we are working in a monster model

**Definition 7.2.** A family  $(\varphi_i(x))_{x \in I}$  is  **$k$ -inconsistent** if for every  $k$ -element subset  $K$  of  $I$  the set  $\{\varphi_i \mid i \in K\}$  is inconsistent

**Definition 7.3.** We say  $\varphi(x, b)$  **divides** over  $A$  (w.r.t.  $k$ ) if there is a sequence  $(b_i)_{i < \omega}$  of realisations of  $\text{tp}(b/A)$  s.t.  $(\varphi(x, b_i))_{i < \omega}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent. A set of formulas  $\pi(x)$  divides over  $A$  if  $\pi(x)$  implies some  $\varphi(x, b)$  which divides over  $A$ . There is no harm in allowing  $\varphi(x, y)$  to contain parameters from  $A$

Note that although we don't restrict our choice of realisations, but by  $k$ -inconsistency, the number of same realisations is less than  $k$

If  $\varphi(x, a)$  implies  $\psi(x, a')$  and  $\psi(x, a')$  divides over  $A$ , then  $\varphi(x, a)$  divides over  $A$ . Thus  $\varphi$  divides over  $A$  iff  $\{\varphi\}$  divides over  $A$ . Also a set  $\pi$

divides over  $A$  iff a conjunction of formulas from  $\pi$  divides over  $A$ . Note that it makes sense to say that  $\pi(\bar{x})$  divides over  $A$  for  $\bar{x}$  an infinite sequence of variables as we may use dummy variables without changing the meaning of dividing

Guess in the definition of divide, we want  $\varphi(x, b)$  to be consistent

As there is a sequence  $(a'_i)_{i < \omega}$  of realisations of  $\text{tp}(a'/A)$  s.t.  $(\psi(x, a'_i))_{i < \omega}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent. If  $a, a' \in A$ , then  $\forall y(\varphi(y, x) \rightarrow \psi(y, a')) \in \text{tp}(a/A)$  and  $\forall y(\varphi(y, a) \rightarrow \psi(y, x)) \in \text{tp}(a'/A)$ . So for each  $a_i$  realizing  $\text{tp}(a/A)$  and  $a'_i$  realizing  $\text{tp}(a'/A)$ ,  $\forall x(\varphi(x, a_i) \rightarrow \psi(x, a'_i))$ . Thus as  $(\varphi(x, a_i) \wedge \psi(x, a'_i))_{i < \omega}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent,  $(\varphi(x, a_i))_{i < \omega}$  is inconsistent since  $\varphi(\mathfrak{C}, a_i) \wedge \psi(\mathfrak{C}, a'_i) = \varphi(\mathfrak{C}, a_i)$

Or, check this. by adding dummy variables we have

$$\models \forall x(\varphi(x, b, b') \rightarrow \psi(x, b, b'))$$

since  $\psi(x, b, b')$  divides over  $A$ , there is a sequence  $(b_i, b'_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  realising  $\text{tp}(bb'/A)$  and s.t.  $\{\psi(x, b_i, b'_i) \mid i \in \mathbb{N}\}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent, so  $\{\varphi(x, b_i, b'_i) \mid i \in \mathbb{N}\}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent

**Example 7.1.** 1. The formula  $x = b$  divides over  $A$  iff there is infinitely many different element realising  $\text{tp}(b/A)$ , which means  $b \notin \text{acl}(A)$ .  
 $k = 2$

2. If a set  $\pi(x)$  of formulas is consistent and defined over  $\text{acl}(A)$ , then it doesn't divide over  $A$
3. In the theory DLO, the formula  $b_1 < x < b_2$  divides over the empty set (for  $k = 2$ ). The type  $p = \{x > a \mid a \in \mathbb{Q}\}$  does not divide over the empty set for any  $k$

$\text{tp}(b_3, b_4) = \text{tp}(b_1, b_2)$  iff  $b_3 < b_4$ . For

*Remark.* 1. If  $a \notin \text{acl}(A)$ , then  $\text{tp}(a/Aa)$  divides over  $A$

1#+BEGIN<sub>proof</sub>

1.  $\text{tp}(a/Aa)$  divides over  $A$  iff there is a  $\varphi(x, a) \in \text{tp}(a/Aa)$ , a  $L(A)$ -formula, divides over  $A$  iff there is  $(a_i)_{i < \omega}$  with  $\text{tp}(a_i/A) = \text{tp}(a/A)$  s.t.  $(\varphi(x, a_i))_{i < \omega}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent

Note that as  $\exists x \varphi(x, x) \in \text{tp}(a/A)$ ,  $\models \varphi(a_i, a_i)$ . As  $a \notin \text{acl}(A)$ , there is infinite such  $a_i$ .

#+END<sub>proof</sub>

**Lemma 7.4.** The set  $\pi(x, b)$  divides over  $A$  iff there is a sequence  $(b_i)_{i < \omega}$  of indiscernibles over  $A$  with  $\text{tp}(b_0/A) = \text{tp}(b/A)$  and  $\bigcup_{i < \omega} \pi(x, b_i)$  inconsistent

We may replace  $\omega$  by any infinite linear order. Note also that  $b$  may be a tuple of infinite length

*Proof.* If  $(b_i)_{i < \omega}$  is a sequence of indiscernibles over  $A$  with  $\text{tp}(b_0/A) = \text{tp}(b/A)$  (Note that  $\models \varphi(b_i) \leftrightarrow \varphi(b_j)$  for any  $i, j \in \omega$ . Thus each of  $(b_i)_{i < \omega}$  realises  $\text{tp}(b/A)$ ) and  $\bigcup_{i < \omega} \pi(x, b_i)$  inconsistent, there is a conjunction  $\varphi(x, b)$  of formulas from  $\pi(x, b)$  for which  $\Sigma(x) = \{\varphi(x, b_i) \mid i < \omega\}$  is inconsistent. So  $\Sigma$  contains some  $k$ -element inconsistent subset. This implies that  $(\varphi(x, b_i))_{i < \omega}$  is  $k$ -inconsistent since  $b_i$  is indiscernibles

Assume conversely that  $\pi(x, b)$  divides over  $A$ . Then some finite conjunction  $\varphi(x, b)$  of formulas from  $\pi(x, b)$  divides. Let  $(b_i)_{i < \omega}$  be a sequence of realisations of  $\text{tp}(b/A)$  s.t.  $(\varphi(x, b_i) \mid i < \omega)$  is  $k$ -inconsistent. Then by Lemma 7.1 there is a sequence  $(c_i)_{i < \omega}$  of indiscernibles realizing  $\text{EM}((b_i)_{i < \omega}/A)$ . Therefore each of  $(c_i)_{i < \omega}$  realises  $\text{tp}(b/A)$  and  $(\varphi(x, c_i) \mid i < \omega)$  is  $k$ -inconsistent. Thus  $\bigcup_{i < \omega} \pi(x, c_i)$  is inconsistent  $\square$

**Corollary 7.5.** *TFAE*

1.  $\text{tp}(a/Ab)$  does not divide over  $A$
2. For any infinite sequence of  $A$ -indiscernibles  $\mathcal{I}$  containing  $b$ , there some  $a'$  with  $\text{tp}(a'/Ab) = \text{tp}(a/Ab)$  and s.t.  $\mathcal{I}$  is indiscernible over  $Aa'$
3. For any infinite sequence of  $A$ -indiscernibles  $\mathcal{I}$  containing  $b$ , there exists  $\mathcal{I}'$  with  $\text{tp}(\mathcal{I}'/Ab) = \text{tp}(a/Ab)$  and s.t.  $\mathcal{I}'$  is indiscernible over  $Aa$
4. For any infinite sequence of  $A$ -indiscernibles  $\mathcal{I}$  containing  $b$ , there exists a sequence  $\mathcal{J}'$  and some  $a'$  with  $\text{tp}(\mathcal{J}'/Ab) = \text{tp}(\mathcal{I}/Ab)$ ,  $\text{tp}(a'/Ab) = \text{tp}(a/Ab)$  and s.t.  $\mathcal{J}'$  is indiscernible over  $Aa'$

1 $\Rightarrow$ 4. proof Since  $\text{tp}(a'/Ab) = \text{tp}(a/Ab)$ , we can take an automorphism fixing  $Ab$  pointwise and taking  $a'$  to  $a$ . Then

1  $\rightarrow$  4. Let  $\mathcal{I} = (b_i)_{i \in I}$  be an infinite sequence of indiscernibles with  $b_{i_0} = b$ . Let  $p(x, y) = \text{tp}(ab/A)$ . Then  $\bigcup_{i \in I} p(x, b_i)$  is consistent by Lemma 7.4. As  $(b_i)_{i \in I}$  contains  $b$ ,  $\text{tp}(b/A) = \text{tp}(b_i/A)$  for all  $i \in \omega$ . Let  $a'$  be a realisation. By Lemma 7.1, there is  $\mathcal{J}'' = (b''_i)_{i \in I}$  indiscernible over  $Aa'$  and realising  $\text{EM}(\mathcal{I}/Aa')$ . Since  $\models p(a', b''_{i_0})$ , there is an automorphism  $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(\mathfrak{C}/Aa')$  taking  $b''_{i_0}$  to  $b$ . put  $\mathcal{J}' = \alpha(\mathcal{J}'')$

2  $\rightarrow$  1. Let  $p(x, y) = \text{tp}(ab/A)$  and let  $(b_i)_{i < \omega}$  be a sequence of indiscernibles with  $\text{tp}(b_0/A) = \text{tp}(b/A)$ . We have to show that  $\bigcup_{i < \omega} p(x, b_i)$  is consistent. By assumption there is  $a'$  with  $\text{tp}(a'/Ab) = \text{tp}(a/Ab)$  s.t.  $\mathcal{I}$

is indiscernible over  $Aa'$ . As  $\models p(a', b)$ ,  $a'$  is a realisation of  $\bigcup_{i < \omega} p(x, b_i)$   
 $\models p(a', b) \Rightarrow \models p(a, b) \models$   
 $\# + \text{END}_{\text{proof}}$

**Proposition 7.6.** *If  $\text{tp}(a/B)$  does not divide over  $A \subseteq B$  and  $\text{tp}(c/Ba)$  does not divide over  $Aa$ , then  $\text{tp}(ac/B)$  does not divide over  $A$*

*Proof.* Let  $b \in B$  be a finite tuple and  $\mathcal{I}$  an infinite sequence of  $A$ -indiscernible containing  $b$ . If  $\text{tp}(a/B)$  does not divide over  $A$ , there is some  $\mathcal{I}'$  with  $\text{tp}(\mathcal{I}'/Ab) = \text{tp}(\mathcal{I}/Ab)$  and indiscernible over  $Aa$ . If  $\text{tp}(c/Ba)$  does not divide over  $Aa$ , there is  $\mathcal{I}''$  with  $\text{tp}(\mathcal{I}''/Aab) = \text{tp}(\mathcal{I}'/Aab)$  and indiscernible over  $Aac$  proving the claim  $\square$

**Theorem 7.7.** *The set of formulas  $\pi(x)$  **forks** over  $A$  if  $\pi(x)$  implies a disjunction  $\bigvee_{l < d} \varphi_l(x)$  of formulas  $\varphi_l(x)$  each dividing over  $A$*

## 8 Stable Theories

### 8.1 Heirs and coheirs

### 8.2 Stability

### 8.3 Definable types

### 8.4 Elimination of imaginaries and $T^{\text{eq}}$

## A Set Theory

### A.1 Sets and classes

Bernays-Gödel set theory is formulated in a two-sorted language, one type of objects being **sets** and the other type of objects being **classes**, with the element-relation defined between sets and sets and between sets and classes only. We use lower case letters as variables for sets and capital letters for classes. BG has the following axioms

1. (a) Extensionality: Sets containing the same elements are equal
- (b) Empty set: The empty set exists
- (c) Pairing: For any sets  $a$  and  $b$ ,  $\{a, b\}$  is a set. This means that there is a set which has exactly the elements  $a$  and  $b$
- (d) Union: For every set  $a$ , the union  $\bigcup a = \{z \mid \exists y \ z \in y \in a\}$  is a set



- (e) Power set: For every set  $a$ , the power set  $\mathfrak{P}(a) = \{y \mid y \subseteq a\}$  is a set
- (f) Infinity: There is an infinite set
- 2. (a) Class extensionality:
- (b) Comprehension: If  $\varphi(x, y_1, \dots, y_m, Y_1, \dots, Y_n)$  is a formula in which only set-variables are quantified, and if  $b_1, \dots, b_m, B_1, \dots, B_n$  are sets and classes, respectively, then
$$\{x \mid \varphi(x, b_1, \dots, b_m, B_1, \dots, B_n)\}$$
is a class
- (c) Replacement: If a class  $F$  is a function, i.e., if for every set  $b$  there is a unique set  $c = F(b)$  s.t.  $(b, c) = \{\{b\}, \{b, c\}\}$  belongs to  $F$ , then for every set  $a$  the image  $\{F(z) \mid z \in a\}$  is a set.
- 3. Regularity: Every nonempty set has an  $\in$ -minimal element

For BGC we add

- 4. Global Choice: There is a function  $F$  s.t.  $F(a) \in a$  for every nonempty set  $a$ .

BGC is a conservative extension of ZFC

## A.2 Cardinals

**Theorem A.1** (Cantor's Theorem). 1. If  $\kappa$  is infinite, then  $\kappa \cdot \kappa = \kappa$

- 2.  $2^\kappa > \kappa$

**Corollary A.2.** 1. If  $\lambda$  is infinite, then  $\kappa + \lambda = \max(\kappa, \lambda)$

- 2. If  $\kappa > 0$  and  $\lambda$  are infinite, then  $\kappa \cdot \lambda = \max(\kappa, \lambda)$

- 3. If  $\kappa$  is infinite, then  $\kappa^\kappa = 2^\kappa$

**Corollary A.3.** The set

$$2^{<\omega} = \bigcup_{n < \omega} 2^n$$

of all finite sequences of elements of a nonempty set  $x$  has cardinality  $\max(|x|, \aleph_0)$

*Proof.* Let  $\kappa$  be the cardinality of all finite sequences in  $x$ . Clearly  $|x| \leq \kappa$  and  $\aleph_0 \leq \kappa$ . On the other hand

$$\kappa = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} |x|^n \leq \left( \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} |x|^n \right) \cdot \aleph_0 = \max(|x|, \aleph_0)$$

because

$$\sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} |x|^n = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } |x| = 1 \\ \aleph_0 & \text{if } 2 \leq |x| \leq \aleph_0 \\ |x| & \text{if } \aleph_0 \leq |x| \end{cases}$$

□

For every cardinal  $\mu$  the **beth function** is defined as

$$\beth_\alpha(\mu) = \begin{cases} \mu & \text{if } \alpha = 0 \\ 2^{\beth_\beta(\mu)} & \text{if } \alpha = \beta + 1 \\ \sup_{\beta < \alpha} \beth_\beta(\mu) & \text{if } \alpha \text{ is a limit ordinal} \end{cases}$$

For any linear order  $(X, <)$  we can easily construct a well-ordered **cofinal subset**, i.e., a subset  $Y$  s.t. for any  $x \in X$  there is some  $y \in Y$  with  $x \leq y$ .

**Definition A.4.** The **cofinality**  $\text{cf}(X)$  is the smallest order type of a well ordered cofinal subset of  $X$

$\text{cf}(X)$  is a **regular** cardinal where an infinite cardinal  $\kappa$  is regular if  $\text{cf}(\kappa) = \kappa$ . Successor cardinals and  $\omega$  are regular.

**Lemma A.5** (The Gödel well-ordering). *There is a bijection  $On \rightarrow On \times On$  which induces a bijection  $\kappa \rightarrow \kappa \times \kappa$  for all infinite cardinals  $\kappa$*

*Proof.* Define

$$(\alpha, \beta) < (\alpha', \beta') \Leftrightarrow (\max(\alpha, \beta), \alpha, \beta) <_{\text{lex}} (\max(\alpha', \beta'), \alpha', \beta')$$

Since this is a well-ordering, there is a unique order-preserving bijection  $\gamma : On \times On \rightarrow On$ . We show by induction that  $\gamma$  maps  $\kappa \times \kappa$  to  $\kappa$  for every infinite cardinal  $\kappa$ , which in turn implies  $\kappa \cdot \kappa = \kappa$ . Since the image of  $\kappa \times \kappa$  is an initial segment, it suffices to show that the set  $X_{\alpha, \beta}$  of predecessors of  $(\alpha, \beta)$  has smaller cardinality than  $\kappa$  for every  $\alpha, \beta < \kappa$ . We note first that  $X_{\alpha, \beta}$  is contained in  $\delta \times \delta$  with  $\delta = \max(\alpha, \beta) + 1$ . Since  $\kappa$  is infinite, we have that the cardinality of  $\delta$  is smaller than  $\kappa$ . Hence by induction  $|X_{\alpha, \beta}| \leq |\delta| \cdot |\delta| < \kappa$ . □

## B Fields

### B.1 Ordered fields

Let  $R$  be an integral domain. A linear  $<$  ordering on  $R$  is **compatible** with the ring structure if for all  $x, y, z \in R$

$$\begin{aligned}x < y &\rightarrow x + z < y + z \\x < y \wedge 0 < z &\rightarrow xz < yz\end{aligned}$$

A field  $(K, <)$  together with a compatible ordering is an **ordered field**

**Lemma B.1.** *Let  $R$  be an integral domain and  $<$  a compatible ordering of  $R$ . Then the ordering  $<$  can be uniquely extended to an ordering of the quotient field of  $R$*

It is easy to see that in an ordered field sums of squares can never be negative. In particular,  $1, 2, \dots$  are always positive and so the characteristic of an ordered field is 0. A field  $K$  in which  $-1$  is not a sum of squares is called **formally real**.

## C Combinatorics

### C.1 Pregeometris

**Definition C.1.** A **pregeometry**  $(X, \text{cl})$  is a set  $X$  with a closure operator  $\text{cl} : \mathfrak{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathfrak{P}(X)$  s.t for all  $A \subseteq X$  and  $a, b \in X$

1. (REFLEXIVITY)  $A \subseteq \text{cl}(A)$
2. (FINITE CHARACTER)  $\text{cl}(A)$  is the union of all  $\text{cl}(A')$ , where the  $A'$  range over all finite subsets of  $A$
3. (TRANSITIVITY)  $\text{cl}(\text{cl}(A)) = \text{cl}(A)$
4. (EXCHANGE)  $a \in \text{cl}(Ab) \setminus \text{cl}(A) \Rightarrow b \in \text{cl}(Aa)$

*Remark.* The following structures are pregeometries

1. A vector space  $V$  with the linear closure operator

A pregeometry where points and the empty set are closed, i.e., where

$$\text{cl}'(\emptyset) = \emptyset \quad \text{and} \quad \text{cl}'(x) = \{x\} \text{ for all } x \in X$$

is called **geometry**. For any pregeometry  $(X, \text{cl})$ , there is an associated geometry  $(X', \text{cl}')$  obtained by setting  $X' = X^\bullet / \sim$  and  $\text{cl}'(A / \sim) = \text{cl}(A)^\bullet / \sim$  where  $\sim$  is the equivalence relation on  $X^\bullet = X \setminus \text{cl}(\emptyset)$  defined by  $\text{cl}(x) = \text{cl}(y)$ .

**Definition C.2.** Let  $(X, \text{cl})$  be a pregeometry. A subset  $A$  of  $X$  is called

1. **independent** if  $a \notin \text{cl}(A \setminus \{a\})$  for all  $a \in A$
2. a **generating set** if  $X = \text{cl}(A)$
3. a **basis** if  $A$  is an independent generating set

**Lemma C.3.** Let  $(X, \text{cl})$  be a pregeometry with generating set  $E$ . Any independent subset of  $E$  can be extended to a basis contained in  $E$ . In particular, every pregeometry has a basis

*Proof.* Let  $B$  be an independence set. If  $x \in X \setminus \text{cl}(B)$ ,  $B \cup \{x\}$  is again independent. As for any  $b \in B$ ,  $b \notin \text{cl}(B \setminus \{b\})$ , whence  $b \notin \text{cl}(B \setminus \{b\} \cup \{x\})$ .

This implies that for a maximal independent subset  $B$  of  $E$ , we have  $E \subseteq \text{cl}(B)$  and therefore  $X = \text{cl}(B)$   $\square$

**Definition C.4.** Let  $(X, \text{cl})$  be a pregeometry. Any subset  $S$  gives rise to two new pregeometries, the **restriction**  $(S, \text{cl}^S)$  and the **relativisation**  $(X, \text{cl}_S)$  where

$$\begin{aligned}\text{cl}^S(A) &= \text{cl}(A) \cap S \\ \text{cl}_S(A) &= \text{cl}(A \cup S)\end{aligned}$$

*Remark.* Let  $A$  be a basis of  $(S, \text{cl}^S)$  and  $B$  a basis of  $(X, \text{cl}_S)$ . Then the (disjoint) union  $A \cup B$  is a basis of  $(X, \text{cl})$

*Proof.* Clearly  $A \cup B$  is a generating set. **Given  $\text{cl}(A) = S$ , we show that  $\text{cl}(A \cup B) = \text{cl}(S \cup B) = X$ . For this is clear since  $S \cup B \subseteq \text{cl}(A \cup B)$ .** Since  $B$  is independent over  $S$ , we have  $b \notin \text{cl}_S(B \setminus \{b\}) = \text{cl}(A \cup B \setminus \{b\})$  for all  $b \in B$ . Consider an  $a \in A$ . We have to show that  $a \notin \text{cl}(A' \cup B)$ , where  $A' = A \setminus \{a\}$ . As  $a \notin \text{cl}(A')$ , we let  $B'$  be a maximal subset of  $B$  with  $a \notin \text{cl}(A' \cup B')$ . If  $B' \neq B$  this would imply that  $a \in \text{cl}(A' \cup B' \cup \{b\})$  for any  $b \in B \setminus B'$  which would in turn imply  $b \in \text{cl}(A \cup B')$ , a contradiction  $\square$

**Lemma C.5.** All bases of a pregeometry have the same cardinality

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be independent and  $B$  a generating subset of  $X$ . We show that

$$|A| \leq |B|$$

Assume first that  $A$  is infinite. Then we extend  $A$  to a basis  $A'$ . Choose for every  $b \in B$  a finite subset  $A_b$  of  $A'$  with  $b \in \text{cl}(A_b)$  **FINITE CHARACTER condition** Since the union of the  $A_b$  is a generating set, we have  $A' = \bigcup_{b \in B} A_b$ . This implies that  $B$  is infinite and

$$|A| \leq |A'| \leq |B|$$

Now assume that  $A$  is finite. That  $|A| \leq |B|$  follows immediately from the following exchange principle: *Given any  $a \in A \setminus B$  there is some  $b \in B \setminus A$  s.t.  $A' = \{b\} \cup A \setminus \{a\}$  is independent.* For, since  $a \in \text{cl}(B)$ ,  $B$  cannot be contained in  $\text{cl}(A \setminus \{a\})$   **$A \setminus \{a\}$  cannot be a generating set since  $a \notin \text{cl}(A \setminus \{a\})$ .** Choose  $b$  in  $B$  but not in  $\text{cl}(A \setminus \{a\})$ . It follows from the exchange property that  $A'$  is independent **For any  $a' \in A'$ , let  $A'' = A' \setminus \{a'\}$ , we have,**

$$b \notin \text{cl}(A'' a') \Rightarrow a' \notin \text{cl}(A'' b) \vee a' \in \text{cl}(A'')$$

**Hence  $a' \notin \text{cl}(A'' b)$ , so  $A'$  is independent** □

**Definition C.6.** The **dimension**  $\dim(X)$  of a pregeometry  $(X, \text{cl})$  is the cardinality of a basis. For a subset  $S$  of  $X$  let  $\dim(S)$  be the dimension of  $(S, \text{cl}^S)$  and  $\dim(X/S)$  the dimension of  $(X, \text{cl}_S)$

By Remark C.1 we have

**Lemma C.7.**  $\dim(X) = \dim(S) + \dim(X/S)$

## D Index

- $\alpha$ -minimal, 88
- $\alpha$ -strongly minimal, 86
- $\omega$ -homogeneous, 40
- prime model, 46
- atomic model, 46
- model complete, 24
- totally transcendental, 55
- type, 13
- universal theory, 18

## E    **TODO Don't understand**

- Companion to this book Chernikov's Lecture notes on stability theory
- Lemma 3.22
- Exercise 3.2.2
- theorem 4.11 need to enhance my TOPOLOGY and ALGEBRA!!!

5.1	5.2	5.5:done	5.35	1	3
5.7:done	5.47	6.1:done	6.2	6.2:done	6.29
6.1					